24

Project No.

TITLE_ Humanized 405

Proto Strategy

	Book No		TITLE	Arima	0			
Page No23		1 1 1	:	1 1 1				:
		ni n e sa a a a	**		Cen i y a	1.000 (m/m) (SA 4	
-j!	• •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••		e	ini i i	÷ • •			
	·	the second second	e an an an an					85 g
	1		10				1 4	-
Humensa		leu val glu se	z djå djå djå	leu val gln pro	dly dly			
		20				1 Ar		8
humiii Hum4D5a		cu ser cys ala	ala ser GLY	PHE THR PHE SER ASN ILE LYS	ASP TYR THR	· · · · ·	10.00	
Hum4D5b Hum4D5c				ASN ILE LYS	THR	1. 10. M.M. 14		
	ATA MET SED +		40				· ·	3
Hum4DSa Hum4DSb	TYR ILE HIS	rh ant sid div	ara pro gry	lys gly leu glu	trp val			*
Hum4DSc	TYR ILE HIS							
humiii HumiDSa	ala VAL ILE S	ER GLU ASN GLY	SER ASP THR	TYR TYR ALA ASP :	SER VAL			
Nume D5b Hume D5c	ARG T	YR PRO THR ASH	GLY TYR GLY TYR	ARG				
humiii		20					1	
Hum4D5a Rum4D5b	bis out any p	NG CHE ING BET	ala thr ala thr		leu tyr ala leu*			
Kum4DSc			ala thr		ila			
humiii HumiDSa	80 B2 B2 lou gln met as	2a 82b 82c 83 on ser leu arg	ala glu asp t	thr als val eyr t	tyr cys			
Hum4DSb Rum4DSc	1							4.1
	ala arg ASP AR	G GLY GLY ALA	VAT COR TYD C	LY ASP VAL TEP 9	ly gin			
Hum4DSb Hum4DSc	ser TRP CL	Y GLY ASP GLY Y GLY ASP GLY Y GLY ASP GLY	PHE TYR ALA M PHE TYR ALA M	ET ASP		- 3	244	
humiii	gly thr leu vo			er opririt.				
Hum4D5a Hum4D5b Hum4D5c								
								÷
man militar .								
						47 1110		
and a sole in						-		
4								
								+1
		1	4	-1. 4				14 E. E.
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	ана (р. 1998) С		· · ·		5. A.M. A. & MILL &	a).	1
			a ngana n da					
	ine and in the second sec	CAL 14 10-		• • • • • • •		an san a s	To Page N	10.25
	by me,	Date	Inverter	by A	1)-+	Date	T	
essed & Understood	2-0 00020	13.3.	MAR	onour	troubs	2	1	
essed & Understood			1 m	a a a a a a	//unin			
essed & Understood			Reporde	d by	Dont	-		

HETZ binding Project No .__ TILE #313 Activity of Hu 475 Fab. Book No.__ 63 From Page No ._ To investigate the activity of Itu 4.DS for AIM: in hibiting the binding of 4051 to the cell line SRBR3 which over-expressed Herz PROTOCOZ + Kabhy King Assay responsed per by Jacq Sarrup LE Hesz [125] 7-475 (0.1nm) 1 SKBR3 cells Varing amonto of (2/2 A shockate) Huff DST. Feb ected for Vassay = 4002 ecitic pundin 247cm). x シェ 11665, 11567, 11603 11 365 total counts 11 612 Test higher ... 10.862, 11473_ 11 168 10,921 PHS 0; 80 mM Glacene) o. In M (200mH ThS - HC 2482 Au 475 (200) ZZ35 PU25-040 Hu 4D5 (1002) 4052 3:805 Test 12:15 12746, 13147. 12 947 12700 O.InM. 9314 9067 1255-7-6E HU435 (NON) 10938, 9918. 10 18 10420 arother-mub-which-Sntepetahan bunder herz HU425 specificully white the interaction of 475 with the SKBR3 hut does not herz expressing cell line interfere with the interaction the articled y 6 Eq. cell line B between this cell line and above Order of Magnitude estimate of Kd 10-100 Bild) when (proste) - estimate that sample contains From sel 4D5 -ab To Page No. ~ 1.6 na leves Inventer litnessed & Understood by me, Date , Date EXHIBITB 807 of 1033 BI Exhibit 1002

INTERLEUKIN-2-RECEPTOR BLOCKADE WITH DACLIZUMAB TO PREVENT ACUTE REJECTION IN RENAL TRANSPLANTATION

FLAVIO VINCENTI, M.D., ROBERT KIRKMAN, M.D., SUSAN LIGHT, M.D., GINNY BUMGARDNER, M.D., PH.D., MARK PESCOVITZ, M.D., PHILIP HALLORAN, M.D., PH.D., JOHN NEYLAN, M.D., ALAN WILKINSON, M.D., HENRIK EKBERG, M.D., PH.D., ROBERT GASTON, M.D., LARS BACKMAN, M.D., PH.D., AND JAMES BURDICK, M.D., FOR THE DACLIZUMAB TRIPLE THERAPY STUDY GROUP*

ABSTRACT

Background Monoclonal antibodies that block the high-affinity interleukin-2 receptor expressed on alloantigen-reactive T lymphocytes may cause selective immunosuppression. Daclizumab is a genetically engineered human IgG1 monoclonal antibody that binds specifically to the α chain of the interleukin-2 receptor and may thus reduce the risk of rejection after renal transplantation.

Methods We administered daclizumab (1.0 mg per kilogram of body weight) or placebo intravenously before transplantation and once every other week afterward, for a total of five doses, to 260 patients receiving first cadaveric kidney grafts and immunosuppressive therapy with cyclosporine, azathioprine, and prednisone. The patients were followed at regular intervals for 12 months. The primary end point was the incidence of biopsy-confirmed acute rejection within six months after transplantation.

Results Of the 126 patients given daclizumab, 28 (22 percent) had biopsy-confirmed episodes of acute rejection, as compared with 47 of the 134 patients (35 percent) who received placebo (P=0.03). Graft survival at 12 months was 95 percent in the daclizumab-treated patients, as compared with 90 percent in the patients given placebo (P=0.08). The patients given daclizumab did not have any adverse reactions to the drug, and at six months, there were no significant differences between the two groups with respect to infectious complications or cancers. The serum half-life of daclizumab was 20 days, and its administration resulted in prolonged saturation of interleukin-2a receptors on circulating lymphocytes.

Conclusions Daclizumab reduces the frequency of acute rejection in kidney-transplant recipients. (N Engl J Med 1998;338:161-5.)

@1998, Massachusens Medical Society.

CUTE rejection is a strong risk factor for chronic rejection in recipients of renal grafts from cadaveric donors.¹ This fact has prompted the development of new immunosuppressive agents designed to reduce the incidence and severity of acute rejection.²⁻⁶ All these agents, however, achieve reductions in the frequency and severity of acute rejection at the price of generalized immunosuppression, with its attendant risks of opportunistic infection and cancer.

One potential target for more specific immunosuppressive therapy with monoclonal antibodies is the interleukin-2 receptor.7 The high-affinity interleukin-2 receptor is composed of three noncovalently bound chains: a 55-kd a chain (also referred to as CD25 or Tac), a 75-kd ß chain, and a 64-kd y chain." This receptor is present on nearly all activated T cells but not on resting T cells. The interaction of interleukin-2 with this high-affinity receptor is required for the clonal expansion and continued viability of activated T cells. A variety of rodent monoclonal antibodies directed against the α chain of the receptor have been used in animals and humans to achieve selective immunosuppression by targeting only T-cell clones responding to the allograft.8-13 Daclizumab, a molecularly engineered human IgG1 incorporating the antigen-binding regions of the parent murine monoclonal antibody, offers the potential for greater therapeutic use of interleukin-2-receptor blockade. 17 We compared the efficacy of daclizumab with placebo for the prevention of acute rejection in renal-transplant recipients.

METHODS

Study Design

We performed a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial at 11 transplantation centers in the United States, 3 in Canada, and 3 in Sweden. Adults receiving first renal allografts from cadaveric donors were eligible for the study. Patients were excluded if they were receiving multiple organ transplants or had a positive crossmatch for T-cell lymphocytes. The protocol was approved by the institutional review board or ethics committee at each participating center, and all patients gave written informed consent.

Immunosuppressive Treatment

All patients received cyclosporine, azathioprine, and prednisone. The first dose of cyclosporine was given during the period from 12 hours before to 24 hours after transplantation.

Daclizumab (Zenapax, Hoflinann-LaRoche) or placebo was

From the University of California, San Francisco (F.V.); Brigham and Wonnen's Hospital. Boston (R.K.); Hoffmann-LaRoche, Nutley, N.J. (S.L.); Ohio State University, Columbus (G.B.); Indiana University, Indianapolis (M.P.); the University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alta., Canada (P.H.); Emory University, Atlanta (J.N.); the University of California, Los Angeles (A.W.); Malmo University Hospital, Malmo, Sweden (H.E.); the University of Albeama, Birmingham (R.G.); Sablgrenska Hospital, Gothenburg, Sweden (L.B.); and Johns Hopkins University, Baltimore (J.B.). Address reprint requests to Dr. Vincenti at the Transplant Service, University of California, San Francisco, 505 Paranssus Ave., Rm. M884, Box 0116, San Francisco, CA 94143-0116.

*Other members of the Daclizumab Triple Therapy Study Group are listed in the Appendix.

Volume 338 Number 3 - 161

administered intravenously over a period of 15 minutes. Each patient received five doses of either daclizumab (1 mg per kilogram of body weight, to a maximum of 100 mg per dose) or placebo (0.2 mg of polysorbate 80 per milliller in 67 mM phosphate buffer). The first dose was administered within 24 hours before transplantation, with subsequent doses given two, four, six, and eight weeks after transplantation.

Primary and Secondary End Points

The primary end point of the study was the incidence of biopsy-confirmed acure rejection within the first six months after transplantation. All patients with an unexplained rise in the serum creatinine concentration or one or more symptoms of acute rejection (fever, pain over the graft, or a decrease in urinary volume) were required to undergo a renal biopsy within 24 hours after the initiation of antirejection therapy, which consisted initially of intravenous methylprednisolone (7 ing per kilogram per day) for three days. The histologic diagnosis of rejection was based on the presence of acute tubulitis or vasculitis and was made by the pathologist at each institution. Patients were considered to have presumptive rejection if they received a course of antirejection therapy in the absence of histologic confirmation of rejection. The diagnosis of any subsequent episodes of rejection in patients presenting with renal dysfunction was based on clinical criteria, such as the absence of evidence of nephrotoxicity or of urinary tract obstruction or infection, with a biopsy for confirmation performed at the investigator's discretion.

Secondary end points included patient survival and graft survival at one year, the time to the first episode of acute rejection, the number of acute rejection episodes per patient, the need for antilymphocyte therapy (OKT3 or polyclonal antihymocyte globulin) because of glucocorticoid-resistant rejection (defined as the absence of a response to intravenous methylprednisolone pulse therapy), graft function (as indicated by the serum creatinine concentration and glomerular filtration rate), and the cumulative dose of prednisone in the first six months after transplantation.

Pharmacokinetic Measurements

Blood samples were collected immediately before and after (for trough and peak concentrations, respectively) the first and fifth infusions of daclizumab or placebo and on days 70 and 84 after transplantation. A sandwich enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay was used to measure daclizumab in serum.¹⁸

In 20 consecutive patients at one U.S. center (University of California, San Francisco), lymphocyte analysis was performed to determine the saturation of the interleukin-2-receptor a chain, with the use of methods reported previously.¹⁷

Glomerular Filtration Rate

The glomerular filtration rate was measured in all patients with functioning grafts six months after transplantation. Measurements were based on iohexol, radioisotope, or inulin clearance.

Statistical Analysis

Differences in categorical variables between the two groups were determined with the use of the Mantel-Haenszel test (with stratification according to center). Differences in the time to the first biopsy-confirmed episode of rejection were determined with the use of the log-rank test (with stratification according to center). The log-rank test (with stratification according to center). The log-rank test was also used to analyze the time to graft failure (or death with a functioning graft) because of the small number of events reported. Kaplan-Meier estimates of the probability of patient survival and graft survival and the cumulative probability of biopsy-confirmed rejection were plotted over time. Differences in the number of presumptive or biopsy-confirmed rejection episodes per patient in the first six months were analyzed with a normal regression model. The scrum creatinine concentrations, glomerular filtration tates, and cumulative doses of prednisone administered during the first six months after transplantation in the two groups were compared with the use of the Wilcoxon rank-sum test. Logistic-regression analysis was used to determine the effects of various factors on the probability of biopsy-confirmed rejection. Proportional-hazards analysis was used to determine the effects of various factors on the time to biopsyconfirmed rejection. The results of lymphocyte and interleukin-2-receptor assays were compared with the use of Student's t-test. All statistical tests were two-sided.

All patients randomly assigned to a treatment group were included in the primary analyses of efficacy and safety, according to the intention-to-treat principle. Values are reported as means \pm SD.

RESULTS

A total of 260 patients were enrolled in the study: 134 patients were assigned to the placebo group, and 126 to the daclizumab group. The two groups were similar with respect to age, sex, race, cause of end-stage renal disease, presence or absence of panel-reactive anti-HLA antibodies, number of HLA-DR mismatches between donor and recipient, and duration of cold ischemia for the graft (Table 1).

All patients received at least one dose of the study drug, and 107 of the patients in the placebo group (80 percent) and 107 of those in the daclizumab group (85 percent) received all five doses. Graft function was delayed in 39 patients in the placebo group (29 percent) and 27 patients in the daclizumab group (21 percent). The early use of prophylactic antilymphocyte therapy for delayed graft function led to the discontinuation of the study drug in nine patients in the placebo group (7 percent) and nine in the daclizumab group (7 percent).

Efficacy

Daclizumab prophylaxis resulted in a significant reduction in the incidence of biopsy-documented acute rejection during the first six months after transplantation (22 percent, vs. 35 percent in the placebo group; P=0.03; odds ratio, 0.5; 95 percent confidence interval, 0.3 to 0.9) (Table 2). The proportion of patients with presumptive or biopsy-confirmed acute rejection and the number of rejection episodes per patient were also lower in the daclizumab group, and the time to the first rejection was longer. There was a trend toward a reduction in the number of patients with two or more rejection episodes and the number receiving antilymphocyte preparations for severe rejection in the daclizumab group. The beneficial effect of daclizumab was not influenced by delayed graft function, initial use of other antilymphocyte therapies, or exclusion of patients who did not receive all five infusions of the study drug (data not shown).

The patient-survival rates at one year were 98 percent in the daclizumab group and 96 percent in the placebo group (Table 3). The graft-survival rates in the daclizumab and placebo groups were 95 and 90 percent, respectively. None of the patients in the daclizumab group but three of those in the placebo group died of infections: one each of aspergillosis,

TABLE 1. BASE-LINE CHARACTERISTICS OF RENAL-ALLOGIAF RECIPIENTS.*					
CHARAGTERISTIC	PLACERO (N = 134)	DACUZUMAD (N = 126)			
Age — ye	47±13	47±13			
Sex - no. of patients (%)					
Male	81 (60)	74 (59)			
Female	53 (40)	52 (+1)			
Race or ethnic group - no, of parients (%)					
White	81 (60)	84 (67)			
Black	27 (20)	24 (19)			
Orlicr	26 (19)	18 (14)			
Cause of renal failure					
Glomerulonephritis	40 (30)	33 (26)			
Diabetes mellitus	29 (22)	32 (25)			
Hereditary or polycystic kidney disease	20 (15)	24 (19)			
Hypertension	19 (14)	18 (14)			
Other	26 (19)	19 (15)			
Panel-reactive serum antibodies					
0-10%	121 (90)	113 (89)			
11-49%	10 (7)	12 (10)			
50-100%	3 (2)	1 (1)			
No. of HLA-DR mismatches					
0	22 (16)	19 (15)			
1	62 (46)	49 (39)			
2	40 (30)	50 (40)			
Graft cold-ischemia time - hr	21:29	22=8			

*Plus-minus values are means #SD. Percentages may not sum re 100 because of rounding.

†Panel-reactive antibodies are anti-HLA antibodies that have a cytotoxic effect on lymphocytes obtained from a panel of donors from the general population.

2Data were missing for some patients.

TABLE 2. ACUTE REJECTION EPISODES IN THE FIRST SIX MONTHS AFTER RENAL TRANSFLANTATION IN THE PLACERO AND DACLIZUMAB GROUPS.

PLACEBO (N=134)	(N=126)	P VALUE
47 (35)	25.(22)	0.03
52 (39)	32 (25)	0.04
18 (13)	9 (7)	0.08
0.6	0.3	0.01
30±27	75±59	0.008
19 (14)	10 (8)	0.09
	(N=134) 47 (35) 52 (39) 18 (13) 0.6 30 ± 27	(N=134) (N=126) 47 (35) 28 (22) 52 (39) 32 (25) 18 (13) 9 (7) 0.6 0.3 30 ± 27 75 ± 59

"Plus-minus values are means ±SD.

randymphocyte therapy consisted of OKT3 or polyelonal antithymocyte globulin. TABLE 3. CAUSES OF DEATH AND RENAL-GRAFT FAILURE AT ONE YEAR IN THE PLACEBO AND DACLIZUNAS GROUPS.

CAUSE	PLACEBO (N = 134)	DACLIZUMAB (N = 126)
	no. of p	atiants (%)
Death	5 (+)	3 (2)
Infection or lymphoma	3 (2)	1 (1)
Cardiovasenlar cause	1(1)	0
Pulmonary embolism	1 (1)	0
Intracerebral bleeding	0	1(1)
Suicide	0	1 (1)
Graft failure	13 (10)	6 (5)
Death	5 (4)	3 (2)
Rejection	3 (2)	1(1)
Technical cause	4 (3)	2(2)
Primary nonfunction	1 (1)	0

coccidioidomycosis, and pseudomonas sepsis. One patient in the daclizumab group died of lymphoma.

The mean serum creatinine concentrations six months after transplantation were the same in the two groups $(1.7\pm0.7 \text{ mg} \text{ per deciliter } [150\pm60 \,\mu\text{mol}$ per liter]). The mean glomerular filtration rate was 55 ± 23 ml per minute in the daclizumab group and 52 ± 22 ml per minute in the placebo group. The average daily doses of prednisone and cyclosporine did not differ between the groups at any time during the study, nor was there a difference in the mean trough whole-blood cyclosporine concentrations at any time.

Adverse Events

The administration of daclizumab was not associated with any immediate side effects. There was no significant difference in reported adverse events between the two groups (Table 4). One patient in the placebo group and two patients in the daclizumab group had lymphoma during the first year after transplantation.

Pharmacokinetic Data

Pharinacokinetic data were available for 92 patients in the daclizumab group. The mean seruin half-life of daclizumab was 20 days.

Circulating Peripheral-Blood Lymphocytes and Interleukin-2 a-Chain Receptor

There were no differences in absolute lymphocyte numbers between the placebo and daelizumab groups before transplantation or for six months afterward. Circulating CD3+ cell concentrations and T-cell subgroups were not measured, because they were not affected by daelizumab therapy in an earlier study.¹⁷ There was a significant decrease in the percentage of circulating lymphocytes that stained with antiTABLE 4. ADVERSE EVENTS AT SIX MONTHS IN THE PLACERO AND DACLIZUMAB GROUPS.

ADVERSE EVENTS	PLACESO (N = 134)	DACUZUMAS (N = 126)
	no. of p	rationts (%)
Serious event*	13 (10)	8 (5)
Fever	16 (12)	11 (9)
Sepsis and bacteremia	9 (7)	4 (3)
Pneumonia	4 (3)	3 (2)
Fungal Infection Fungentia Local infection	27 (20) 2 (1) 25 (19)	21 (17) 0 21 (17)
Local infection† Cellulitis and wound infection	70 (52) 4 (3)	59 (47) 7 (6)
Urinary tract infection Other	44 (33) 38 (28)	34 (27) 36 (29)
Any viral infection† Viremia Local infection	32 (24) 12 (9) 21 (16)	29 (23) 12 (10) 20 (16)
Cytomegalovirus	14 (10)	15 (12)
Virenia Tissue infection	10 (7) 4 (3)	12 (10) 3 (2)

"Serious adverse events were defined as complications other than death or rejection that prolonged or required hospiralization and were possibly or probably related to the study drug.

†Some patients had more than one type of infection.

CD25 antibody starting 10 hours after transplantation and lasting up to four months in the daclizumab group (data not shown). Similarly, there was a significant decrease in the percentage of circulating lymphocytes that stained with the fluorescein-conjugated antibody 7g7, which binds to an interleukin-2 α -chain-receptor epitope distinct from the epitope recognized by daclizumab and reflects total interleukin-2 α -receptor expression (data not shown).

DISCUSSION

We found that the patients receiving daclizumab in addition to maintenance therapy with three immunosuppressive agents had a lower frequency of biopsy-confirmed acute rejection in the first six months after transplantation than the patients receiving placebo with the three immunosuppressive agents. In addition, the time to the first episode of acute rejection was significantly prolonged, and the mean number of episodes per patient significantly reduced in the daclizumab group. These results were obtained without a concomitant increase in infectious complications or cancers. The efficacy of daclizumab is probably related to its selective target, the α -chain component of the high-affinity interleukin-2 receptor, which is present almost exclusively on activated T cells. Use of the drug thus spares other immunocompetent cells.⁷

Only 10 percent of daclizumab is composed of murine sequences, which are from the antigen-binding regions of the parent antibody. These sequences are inserted into human immunoglobulin with the use of molecular biologic techniques.¹⁴ Our study highlights the advantages of this type of antibody, including its prolonged serum half-life, approaching that of human IgG, and the absence of functional immunogenicity associated with its usc.^{15,16,19,20}

The exact mechanism or mechanisms of action of daclizumab are not known. A likely mechanism is that it binds to circulating lymphocytes with interleukin-2 α -chain receptors but does not activate the receptors, and the cells therefore have no free interleukin-2 α -chain receptors available for activation by interleukin-2. In addition, the decline in the percentage of circulating lymphocytes expressing CD25 (measured by staining with 7g7 antibody) without an accompanying decrease in the absolute number of lymphocytes suggests that the expression of interleukin-2 receptors is down-regulated or the shedding of the daclizumab-bound interleukin-2 α chain is increased.

In conclusion, when added to therapy with cyclosporine, azathioprine, and prednisone, daclizumab reduces the frequency of acute rejection and improves short-term graft survival in renal-transplant recipients.

Supported by a grant from Hoffmann-Laltoche.

We are indebted to Dr. Thomas A. Waldmann for his contribution to the development of daclizumab, and to Mi. Peysy Millar for her assistance in the preparation of the manuscript.

APPENDIX

In'addition to the authors, the following investigators participated in the Daelizumab Triple Therapy Study Group: Victoria General Hospital, Halifuz, N.S., Canada – B. Kibert; Huddings Horpital, Huddinge, Sweden – G. Tyden; University of Minnesota, Minneapolis – A. Matas; Betb Irrael Denconess Medical Center, Baston – M. Shapiro; Tampa General Hospital, Tumpa, Flu. – G. Chan; Vancouver General Hospital, Vancouver, B.C., Canada – P. Keown; University of California, San Francisco – M. Lantz; University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alia., Canada – K. Solez; and Haffmann-LaRosin, Nutley, N.J. – A. Lin, I. Patel, K. Nieforth, A. Wolitzky, and J. Hakimi.

REFERENCES

 Ferguson R. Acute rejection episodes — best predictor of long-term primary cadaveria renal transplant survival. Clin Transplant 1994;8:328-31.
 Sollinger HW. Mycophenolate mofetil for the prevention of acute rejection in primary cadaveric renal allograft recipients. Transplantation 1995; 60:225-32.

 Vincenti F, Laskow DA, Neylan JF, Mendez R, Matas AJ. One-year follow-up from an open-label trial of FKS06 in primary kidney transplantation: a report of the U.S. Multicenter PKS06 Kidney Transplantation Group, Transplantation 1996;61:1576-81.

 Morris RÉ. Mechanisms of action of new immunosuppressive drugs. Kidney Int Suppl 1996;53:S-26–S-38.

5. Kahan BD. Sirolimus: a new agent for clinical renal transplantation. Transplant Proc 1997;29:48-50.

 Gruber SA, Chan GLC, Canafax DM, Matas AJ. Immunosoppression in renal reasplantation. 11. Corricosceroids, antilymphocyte globulin, and OKT3, Clin Transplant 1991;5:219-32. 7. Taniguchi T, Minami Y. The IL-2/IL-2 receptor system: a corrent overview. Cell 1993;73:5-8.

8. Kupiec-Weglinski JW, Diamantstein T, Tilney NL, Stroin TB. Therapy with monoclonal antibody to interleukin 2 receptor spares suppressor T cells and prevents or reverses acute allografr rejection in rats. Proc Narl Acad Sci U S A 1986;83:2624-7,

9. Reed MH. Shapiro ME, Strom TB, et al. Prolongation of primate renal allograft survival by anti-Tac, an anti-human IL-2 receptor monoclosed anribody. Transplantation 1989;47:55-9.

10. Soulillow J-P, Cantarovich D, Le MaufF B, et al. Randomized con trolled trial of a monoclonal antibody against the interleukin-2 receptor (33B3.1) as compared with rabbit antirhymocyte globulin for prophy-laxis against rejection of renal allografis. N Engl J Med 1990;322:1175-82.

11. Kirkman RL, Shapiro ME, Carpenter CB, et al. A randomized prospective trial of anti-Tac monoclonal antibody in human renal transplantarion, Transplantation 1991;51:107-13.

12. van Gelder T, Zietse R, Mulder AH, et al. A double blind, placebocontrolled study of monoclonal anti-interleukin-2 receptor antibody (BT563) administration to prevent acure rejection after kidney transplan-ration. Transplantation 1995;60:248-52.

13. Reding R. Vraux H, de Ville de Goyet J, et al. Monoclonal antibodies in prophylactic immunosuppression after liver transplantation; a randomized controlled trial comparing OKT3 and anti-1L-2 receptor monoclonal antibody LO-Tace I. Transplantation 1993:55:534-41.

14. Queen C, Schueider WP, Selick HE, et al. A humanized anribody that binds to the interleukin 2 receptor, Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 1989;86: 10029.33.

15. Hakimi J. Mould D. Waldmann TA, Queen C, Anasetti C, Light S. Development of Zenapax: a humanized anti-Tac antibody. In: Harris WJ, Adaie JR, eds. Annibudy therspeutics. New York: CRC Press, 1997:277-300.

16. Hakimi J, Chizzonite R, Luke DR, et al. Reduced immunogenicity and improved pharmacokinetics of humanized anti-Tac in cynomolgus monkeys.] Immunol 1991;147:1352-9.

17. Vincenti F, Lantz M, Birnbaum J, et al. A please I trial of humanized anti-interleakin 2 receptor antibudy in renal transplant recipients. Transplantation 1997;63:33-8. 18. Fayer BE, Soni PP, Binger MH, Mould DR, Satoh H. Determination

of lumanized anti-Tac in human scrum by a sandwich enzyme linked im-munosorbene assay. J Immunol Methods 1995;186:47-54.

19. Brown PS Jr. Parenteau GL, Dirbas FM, et al. Anti-Tac-H, a human-Brown PS Jr, Parenteau GL, Diroas Pen, et al. Auforsaceria and ized antibody to the interfeukin 2 receptor, prolongs primate cardiae al-lograft survival. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 1991;88:2663-7.
 Anasetti C, Hansen JA, Waldmann TA, et al. Treatment of acure graft.

versus-host disease with humanized anti-Tac: an antibody that binds to the interleukin-2 receptor. Blood 1994;84:1320-7.

	Application No. 08/146,206	Applicant(s) Carter et	al
Interview Summary	Examiner MINH TAM I	DAVIS	Group Art Unit 1642	
All participants (applicant, applicant's representative	e, PTO personnel):			
(1) MINH TAM DAVIS	(3)			
(2) Wendy Lee	(4)			
Date of Interview Dec 11, 2001				
Type: a) ⊠ Telephonic b) ☐ Video Confere c) ☐ Personal [copy is given to 1) ☐ app Exhibit shown or demonstration conducted: d) ☐ '	olicant 2) applicant's r			
Claim(s) discussed:				
Identification of prior art discussed:				
Pending claims 43-105, 113-131 are allowable.				
(A fuller description, if necessary, and a copy of the	e amendments which the e	examiner an	reed would reade	er the claims
allowable, if available, must be attached. Also, wh available, a summary thereof must be attached.)				
i) It is not necessary for applicant to provide	a separate record of the s	ubstance of	the interview (if	box is checked).
Unless the paragraph above has been checked, THE INCLUDE THE SUBSTANCE OF THE INTERVIEW. (3 already been filed, APPLICANT IS GIVEN ONE MON SUBSTANCE OF THE INTERVIEW. See Summary o	See MPEP section 713.04) ITH FROM THIS INTERVIE	. If a reply W DATE TO	to the last Office FILE A STATEN	e action has MENT OF THE
Examiner Note: You must sign this form unless it is an Attachment to a signed Office action.				

1450 1 01 /



1600

		RAW SEQUENCE LISTING PATENT APPLICATION: US/08/146,206C	DATE: 12/11/2001 TIME: 13:58:59
			raw 67 67 12-740
		Input Set : A:\p0709p1.txt	~ K
		Output Set: N:\CRF3\12112001\H146206C.r	:aw 67
		SPOUPNOP IICTIC	00
3	SEQUENCE	SEQUENCE LISTING	\sim
5	A CONTRACTOR OF A DATE	RAL INFORMATION:	12-100
7		APPLICANT: Carter, Paul J.	- + 4-0
8	1-1	Presta, Leonard G.	
10	(ii)	TITLE OF INVENTION: Method for Making Human	nized Antibodies
12		NUMBER OF SEQUENCES: 26	
14		CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS:	
15		(A) ADDRESSEE: Genentech, Inc.	
16		(B) STREET: 1 DNA Way	ENTERED
17		(C) CITY: South San Francisco	FNIERED
18		(D) STATE: California	Let a .
19		(E) COUNTRY: USA	
20		(F) ZIP: 94080	
22	(V)	COMPUTER READABLE FORM:	
23		(A) MEDIUM TYPE: 3.5 inch, 1.44 Mb floppy	disk
24		(B) COMPUTER: IBM PC compatible	
25		(C) OPERATING SYSTEM: PC-DOS/MS-DOS	C
26		(D) SOFTWARE: WinPatin (Genentech)	
28	(Vi)	CURRENT APPLICATION DATA:	
29		(A) APPLICATION NUMBER: US/08/146,206C	
30		(B) FILING DATE: 17-Nov-1993	
31		(C) CLASSIFICATION:	
33	(vii)	PRIOR APPLICATION DATA:	
34		(A) APPLICATION NUMBER: 07/715272	
35		(B) FILING DATE: 14-JUN-1991	
37		ATTORNEY/AGENT INFORMATION:	
38		(A) NAME: Lee, Wendy M.	
39		(B) REGISTRATION NUMBER: 40,378	
40	11	(C) REFERENCE/DOCKET NUMBER: P0709P1	
42		TELECOMMUNICATION INFORMATION:	
43		(A) TELEPHONE: 650/225-1994	
	(2) THEO	(B) TELEFAX: 650/952-9881	
47		RMATION FOR SEQ ID NO: 1: SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:	
48	(1)	(A) LENGTH: 109 amino acids	
49		(B) TYPE: Amino Acid	
50		(D) TOPOLOGY: Linear	
52	(xi)	SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO: 1:	
54		Gln Met Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala	Ser Val
55	1	5 10	15
57		Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Arg Ala Ser Gln Asp	
58		20 25	30
60	Thr Ala	Val Ala Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly Lys Ala	
61		35 40	45
63	Leu Leu	Ile Tyr Ser Ala Ser Phe Leu Glu Ser Gly Val	Pro Ser
64		50 55	60

C--> C-->

M-T DAVIS

814 of 1033

BI Exhibit 1002

DATE: 12/11/2001

TIME: 13:58:59



PATENT APPLICATION: US/08/146,206C

RAW SEQUENCE LISTING

Input Set : A:\p0709pl.txt Output Set: N:\CRF3\12112001\H146206C.raw Arg Phe Ser Gly Ser Arg Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Leu Thr Ile Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro Glu Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln His Tyr Thr Thr Pro Pro Thr Phe Gly Gln Gly Thr Lys Val Glu Ile Lys Arg Thr (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO: 2: (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS: (A) LENGTH: 120 amino acids (B) TYPE: Amino Acid (D) TOPOLOGY: Linear (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO: 2: Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly Gly Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Phe Asn Ile Lys Asp Thr Tyr Ile His Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu Glu Trp Val Ala Arg Ile Tyr Pro Thr Asn Gly Tyr Thr Arg Tyr Ala Asp Ser Val Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Ala Asp Thr Ser Lys Asn Thr Ala Tyr Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Ser Arg Trp Gly Gly Asp Gly Phe Tyr Ala Met Asp Val Trp Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser 111 (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO: 3: (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS: (A) LENGTH: 109 amino acids (B) TYPE: Amino Acid (D) TOPOLOGY: Linear (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO: 3: Asp Ile Gln Met Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Val Gly Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Arg Ala Ser Gln Asp Val Ser Ser Tyr Leu Ala Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly Lys Ala Pro Lys Leu Leu Ile Tyr Ala Ala Ser Ser Leu Glu Ser Gly Val Pro Ser Arg Phe Ser Gly Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Leu Thr Ile Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro Glu Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln

Tyr Asn Ser Leu Pro Tyr Thr Phe Gly Gln Gly Thr Lys Val Glu

815 of 1033



RAW SEQUENCE LISTING DATE: 12/11/2001 PATENT APPLICATION: US/08/146,206C TIME: 13:58:59 Input Set : A:\p0709p1.txt Output Set: N:\CRF3\12112001\H146206C.raw 141 Ile Lys Arg Thr 144 (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO: 4: (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS: (A) LENGTH: 120 amino acids (B) TYPE: Amino Acid (D) TOPOLOGY: Linear (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO: 4: Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly Gly Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Ala Ser Gly Phe Thr Phe Ser 159 Asp Tyr Ala Met Ser Trp Val Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly Leu Glu Trp Val Ala Val Ile Ser Glu Asn Gly Ser Asp Thr Tyr Tyr Ala Asp Ser Val Lys Gly Arg Phe Thr Ile Ser Arg Asp Asp Ser Lys Asn Thr Leu Tyr Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Ala Arg Asp Arg Gly Gly Ala Val Ser Tyr Phe Asp Val Trp Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser Ser 177 (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO: 5: (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS: (A) LENGTH: 109 amino acids (B) TYPE: Amino Acid (D) TOPOLOGY: Linear (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO: 5: Asp Ile Val Met Thr Gln Ser His Lys Phe Met Ser Thr Ser Val Gly Asp Arg Val Ser Ile Thr Cys Lys Ala Ser Gln Asp Val Asn Thr Ala Val Ala Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly His Ser Pro Lys Leu Leu Ile Tyr Ser Ala Ser Phe Arg Tyr Thr Gly Val Pro Asp Arg Phe Thr Gly Asn Arg Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe Thr Phe Thr Ile 201 Ser Ser Val Gln Ala Glu Asp Leu Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Gln Gln His Tyr Thr Thr Pro Pro Thr Phe Gly Gly Gly Thr Lys Leu Glu Ile Lys Arg Ala 210 (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO: 6: (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

816 of 1033





RAW SEQUENCE LISTING PATENT APPLICATION: US/08/146,206C DATE: 12/11/2001 TIME: 13:58:59

Input Set : A:\p0709p1.txt Output Set: N:\CRF3\12112001\H146206C.raw

						10									
213			2.47				0 am		acid	S					
214			1000	1. S			o Ac								
215							Line								
217		(xi)												6.5	
219		Val	GIN	Leu			Ser	GIY	Pro		Leu	Val	Lys	Pro	1.00
220					5					10		-		- 1	15
222		Ser	Leu	LYS		Ser	Cys	Thr	Ala		GIY	Phe	Asn	116	
223		mb		T 1-	20	-		+		25	-		-		30
225		Thr	TYr	11e		Trp	vai	LYS	GIN		Pro	GLU	GIN	GIY	
226		-	110	c1	35	T10		Dee	mha	40	C 1	·	mba	1	4
229		Trp	TTG	GIY	50	TTE	TAT	PIO	THT	22	GLY	TAT	1.01	Arg	191
231		Pro	Tue	Dha	(202)	Ann	Tue	11-	The	55	Thr	715	Aco	mbr	
232		PIO	пуз	File	65	Asp	цуз	Ald	THI	70	THI	ALG	Asp	1111	75
234		Asn	Thr	Ala		Leu	C1n	Val	Cor		Lou	Thr	Cor	clu	
235		491	THI	AIG	80	neu	orn	var	Der	85	Leu	THE	Der	Gru	9(
237		Ala	Val	Tyr	- S.A.	Cvs	Ser	Ara	Tro		Glv	Asp	GIV	Phe	
238				+1+	95	010	our		++P	100	011	TIPE	orl	LINC	105
240		Met	Asp	Tyr	20	Glv	Gln	Glv	Ala	1000	Val	Thr	Va1	Ser	1.1.1
241			E	-1-	110	2001	aren.	1	1.1.2.2.	115		6	1000		120
243	(2)	INFO	RMAT	ION I		SEQ :	ID NO	0: 7	:	222					
245			SEQU			1.0									
246							base								
247			(B)) TYI	PE: 1	Nucle	eic 1	Acid							
248			(C)) STI	RANDI	EDNE	SS: S	Sing	le						
249			(D)) TOI	POLOG	GY: 1	Linea	ar							
251		(xi)	SEQU	JENCI	E DES	SCRI	PTIO	1: SI	EQ II	D NO	: 7:				
254		GATA													
	(2)														
258		(i)	SEQU												
259							base		irs						
260							eic A								
261			10 million (1990)				SS: S		Le						
262			and Anothe				Linea								
264		(Xi)									. 9:				
267		TGAT(3 T					
209	(2)														
272		(1)	SEQU			1 m m m m m m m m m m m m m m m m m m m	base								
273							eic A		LIS						
274							SS: 5		0						
275							Linea		LC						
277		(xi)							T OT	NO					
280		rsmar							-X -1						
282) -						
284			SEQU												
285		(+)					base								
286			(B)	TYP		Nucle	eic F		di tana sa ang						



BI Exhibit 1002



RAW SEQUENCE LISTING

•

DATE: 12/11/2001 TIME: 13:58:59

Input Set : A:\p0709pl.txt
Output Set: N:\CRF3\12112001\H146206C.raw

PATENT APPLICATION: US/08/146,206C

288 (D) TOPOLOGY: Linear 290 (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO: 10: 293 TGAGGAGACG GTGACCGTGG TCCCTTGGCC CCAG 34 295 (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO: 11; (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS: 297 298 (A) LENGTH: 36 base pairs 299 (B) TYPE: Nucleic Acid 300 (C) STRANDEDNESS: Single 301 (D) TOPOLOGY: Linear 303 (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO: 11: 306 GTAGATAAAT CCTCTAACAC AGCCTATCTG CAAATG 36 308 (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO: 12: 310 (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS: 311 (A) LENGTH: 36 base pairs 312 (B) TYPE: Nucleic Acid 313 (C) STRANDEDNESS: Single 314 (D) TOPOLOGY: Linear 316 (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO: 12: 319 GTAGATAAAT CCAAATCTAC AGCCTATCTG CAAATG 36 321 (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO: 13: 323 (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS: 324 (A) LENGTH: 36 base pairs 325 (B) TYPE: Nucleic Acid 326 (C) STRANDEDNESS: Single 327 (D) TOPOLOGY: Linear 329 (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO: 13: 332 GTAGATAAAT CCTCTTCTAC AGCCTATCTG CAAATG 36 334 (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO: 14: 336 (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS: 337 (A) LENGTH: 68 base pairs 338 (B) TYPE: Nucleic Acid 339 (C) STRANDEDNESS: Single 340 (D) TOPOLOGY: Linear 342 (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO: 14: 345 CTTATAAAGG TGTTTCCACC TATAACCAGA AATTCAAGGA TCGTTTCACG 50 347 ATATCCGTAG ATAAATCC 68 349 (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO: 15: (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS: 351 352 (A) LENGTH: 30 base pairs 353 (B) TYPE: Nucleic Acid 354 (C) STRANDEDNESS: Single 355 (D) TOPOLOGY: Linear 357 (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO: 15: 360 CTATACCTCC CGTCTGCATT CTGGAGTCCC 30 362 (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO: 16: 364 (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS: 365 (A) LENGTH: 107 amino acids 366 (B) TYPE: Amino Acid 367 (D) TOPOLOGY: Linear



1 1 2

.0

VERIFICATION SUMMARY PATENT APPLICATION: US/08/146,206C DATE: 12/11/2001 TIME: 13:59:00

-Input Set : A:\p0709pl.txt Output Set: N:\CRF3\12112001\H146206C.raw

L:3 M:244 W: Invalid beginning of sequence listing, Data=[SEQUENCE LISTING], Duplicate Sequence Listing Title! L:29 M:220 C: Keyword misspelled or invalid format, [(A) APPLICATION NUMBER:]

L:30 M:220 C: Keyword misspelled or invalid format, [(R) FILING DATE:]

Genentech, Inc.

20

Anna S. Kan Legal Department

(650) 225-2830 Fax (650) 952-9881 kan@gene.com

TO: Examiner Minh-Tam Davis From: Windy Lee

This is the priority document for 08/146, 206.

12/12/2001

1

Genentech Legal Department

1 DNA Way South San Francisco, CA 94080 650-225-2830 Fax: 650-952-9881/9882

FAX TRANSMISSION COVER SHEET

Date: December 12, 2001

To: Examiner Minh-Tam Davis Group Art 1642

Fax: (703) 746-7145

Re: U.S. Ser. No 09/146,206 filed August 1, 1995 Attorney Docket No.: P0709P1

Sender: Anna Kan for Wendy Lee

YOU SHOULD RECEIVE 12 PAGE(5), INCLUDING THIS COVER SHEET. IF YOU DO NOT RECEIVE ALL THE PAGES, PLEASE CALL 650-225-2830.

CONFIDENTIALITY NOTS

The documents accompanying this factibile transmission contain information from GENENTECH, INC. which is confidential or privileged. This information is intended only for the individual or entry named on this transmission sheet. If you are not the intended recipient, be aware that any disclosure, copying, distribution, or use of the contents of this fared information is strictly prohibited. If you have received this facesheld in error, please notify us by telephone ismediately so that we can atrictly prohibited. If you have received this facesheld in error, please notify us by telephone ismediately so that we can atrictly for the return of the original comments to us and the retransmission of them to the intended recipient.

Dear Examiner Davis,

Pursuant to your request, attached are courtesy copies of the IDS Transmittals and PTO-1449 Forms filed on August 1, 1995 and February 1, 1999. We understand that you have the cited references but, if not, let us know and we will be happy to provide further copies.

Kindly send us initialed copies of the PTO-1449 Forms for the IDSs filed on the following dates. The reference nos. are noted below in parentheses.

09/02/97 (refs. 100-207) 08/24/98 (refs. 215-224) 02/01/99 (refs. 225-262) 03/09/99 (ref. 263) 08/30/01 (ref. 264-265)

Very truly yours, Genentech, Inc.

una han

Anna Kan for Wendy Lee

12-12-01 11:50am From-Gener

Patent Docket P0709P1

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re A	pplication of	Group Art Unit: 1642
Paul J	. Carter et al.	Examiner: J. Reeves
Serial	No.: 08/146,206	a and a superior data to a state of a state
Filed:	November 17, 1993	CERTIFICATE OF HAND DELIVERY Thereby contributed this correspondence is beinghond delivered in an envelope aschessed to: Assistant Commissioner of Patente, Washington, D.C. 2023) on
For:	METHOD FOR MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES	February 1999 R.H. Mitchelf

SUPPLEMENTAL INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT

Assistant Commissioner of Patents Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

Applicants submit herewith patents, publications or other information (attached hereto and liviad on the attached Form PTO-1449) of which they are aware, which they believe may be material to the examination of this application and in respect of which there may be a duty to disclose in accordance with 37 CFR §1.56.

This Information Disclosure Statement:

- (a) (a accompanies the new patent application submitted herewith. 37 CFR §1.97(a),
- (b) () is filed within three months after the filing date of the application or within three months after the date of entry of the national stage of a PCT application as set forth in 37 CFR§1.491.
- (c) () as far as is known to the undersigned, is filed before the mailing date of a first Office action on the merits.
- (d) () is filed after the first Office Action and more than three months after the application's filing date or PCT national stage date of entry filing but, as far as is known to the undersigned, prior to the mailing date of either a final rejection or a notice of allowance, whichever occurs first, and is accompanied by either the fee (\$240) set forth in 37 CFR §1.17(p) or a statement as specified in 37 CFR §1.97(e), as checked below. Should any fee be due, the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is hereby authorized to charge Deposit Account No. 07-0630 in the amount of \$240.00 to cover the cost of this Information Disclosure Statement. Any deficiency or overpayment

Received from < +16509529881 > at 12/12/01 2:55:22 PM [Eastern Standard Time]____

12/13/01

08/146,206

Page 2

should be charged or credited to this deposit account. <u>A duplicate of this sheet is</u> enclosed.

- (e) () is filed after the mailing date of either a final rejection or a notice of allowance, whichever occurred first, and is accompanied by the fee (\$130) set forth in 37 CFR \$1.17(i) and a statement as specified in 37 CFR \$1.97(e). as checked below. This document is to be considered as a petition requesting consideration of the information disclosure statement. The U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is hereby authorized to charge Deposit Account No. 07-0630 in the amount of \$130.00 to cover the cost of this Information Disclosure Statement. Any deficiency or overpayment should be charged or credited to this deposit account. <u>A duplicate of this sheet is enclosed</u>.
- (f) (x) is filed after the malling date of a final rejection, but a request to withdraw the finality thereof under 37 CFR § 1.129(a) was submitted on August 24, 1998. The U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is hereby authorized to charge Deposit Account No. 07-0630 to cover the cost of this Information Disclosure Statement In the event that any fees are due. <u>A duplicate of this sheet is enclosed.</u>

(If either of boxes (d) or (e) is checked above, the following statement under 37 CFR §1.97(e) may need to be completed.) The undersigned states that:

- [] Each Item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication mailed from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of this information disclosure statement.
- No item of information contained in this information disclosure statement was cited in a communication mailed from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application and, to the knowledge of the undersigned after making reasonable inquiry, was known to any individual designated in 37 CFR §1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of this information disclosure statement.

A list of the patent(s) or publication(s) is set forth on the attached Form PTO-1449 (Modified).

A copy of the items on PTO-1449 is supplied herewith:

(x) each () none () only those listed below:

A concise explanation of relevance of the items listed on PTO-1449 is:

(x) not given

() given for each listed item

- given for only non-English language listed item(s) (Required)
- In the form of an English language copy of a Search Report from a foreign patent

From-Genentech Legal

08/146,206

Page 3

office, issued in a counterpart application, which refers to the relevant portions of the references.

The Examiner is reminded that a "concise explanation of the relevance" of the submitted prior art "may be nothing more than identification of the particular figure or paragraph of the patent or publication which has some relation to the claimed invention," MPEP §609.

While the information and references disclosed in this Information Disclosure Statement may be "material" pursuant to 37 CFR § 1.56, it is not intended to constitute an admission that any patent, publication or other information referred to therein Is "prior art" for this invention unless specifically designated as such.

In accordance with 37 CFR §1.97(g), the filing of this Information Disclosure Statement shall not be construed to mean that a search has been made or that no other material information as defined in 37 CFR §1.56(a) exists. It is submitted that the Information Disclosure Statement is in compliance with 37 CFR §1.98 and MPEP §609 and the Examiner is respectfully requested to consider the listed references.

G

BV:

Respectfully submitted, ITECH, INC.

Date: January 29, 1999

Wendy M. Lee Reg. No. 40,378

I DNA Way So. San Francisco, CA 94080-4990 Phone: (650) 225-1994 Fax: (650) 952-9881

11:48am

1

In re Application of: Paul J. Carter el al. Serial No .: 08/146,205 Filed On: 17 November 1993 Mailed On: 1 August 1995

Docket No.: 709P1 By: Wendy M. Lee Reg. No .:

The following has been received in the U.S. Patent Office on the date stamped:

- Amendment/Response
- Extension of Time Request (dup)
 - Communication/Transmittal Letter (dup)
- Notice of Appeal (dup)
- Issue Fee Transmittal Form
- Information Disclosure Statement (Supplemental) Form 1449 with <u>3</u> References
- Certificate of Mailing
 - Certificate of Express Mailing
 - Express Mail Label No.: Other: Limited Recognition
 - X

U.S. Patent Application Rule 60 Declaration/Power of Alty Assignment

Ruie 52

- Recordation Form/Fee
- Drawings: Sheets
- Formal Sequence Listing & Diskette
- PCT Patent Application

In re Application of: Paul J. Carter et al. Serial No.: 08/146,206 Filed On: 17 November 1993 Mailed On: 1 August 1995

Docket No .: 709P1 By; Wendy M. Lee Reg. No.:

The following has been received in the U.S. Palent Office on the date stamped:

	Amendment/Response		200 C
-	Extension of Time Remiser I due		U.S. Patent Application
-	Communication/Transmittal Latter I du		Rule 60 Rule 62
-	NOTICE OF ADORAL (dun)		Declaration/Power of Alty
	Issue Fee Transmittal Form	-	Assignment
X	Information Disclosure Statement 19.	- IL and	Recordation Form/Fce
X	THE TTO WHILL 3 KOLODOAD	Anadelian HOV	Drawings:Shects
XXX	Certificate of Mailing	Mr. OI	Informal Formal
	Certificate of Express Mailing 7	A AUG	Sequence Listing & Diekotto
	Express Mail Labor No .	3 -	PCT Patent Application
X	Other: Limited Recognition	1995	and a second second
		1035 4.	
	19	30. 1	
		RADEMARK	

Received from <+16509529881 > at 12/12/01 2:55:22 PM [Eastern Standard Time]

9. V ...

PATENT DOCKET 709P1

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re Application of

Paul J. Carter et al.

Serial No. 08/146,206

Filed: 17 November 1993

For: METHOD FOR MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES TAILIN DOORLY TOO

Group Art Unit: 1806

Examiner: D. Adams

CERTIFICATE: OF MAILING certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Poatal Service as first class mall in an and to: Commissioner at Patenta and a inditio Tredemarks, Washington, D.C. 20231 on 8/1195 Juane 811/94 Date of Sign

SUPPLEMENTAL INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT

BOX DD Honorable C

Honorable Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

Applicants submit herewith patents, publications or other information (attached hereto and listed on the attached Form PTO-1449) of which they are aware, which they believe may be material to the examination of this application and in respect of which there may be a duty to disclose in accordance with 37 CFR \$1.56.

This Information Disclosure Statement:

- (a) [] accompanies the new patent application submitted herewith. 37 CFR §1.97(a).
- (b) [] is filed within three months after the filing date of the application or within three months after the date of entry of the national stage of a PCT application as set forth in 37 CFR§1.491.
- (c) [] as far as is known to the undersigned, is filed before the mailing date of a first Office action on the merits.
- (d) [X] is filed after the first Office Action and more than three months after the application's filing date or PCT national stage date of entry filing but, as far as is known to the undersigned, prior to the mailing date of either a final rejection or a notice of allowance, whichever occurs first, and is accompanied by either the fee (\$210) set forth in 37 CFR \$1.17(p) or a certification as specified in 37 CFR \$1.97(e), as checked below. Should any fee be due, the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is hereby authorized to charge Deposit Account No. 07-0630 in the amount of \$210.00 to cover the cost of this

08/146,206

11:49 an

Page 2

Information Disclosure Statement. Any deficiency or overpayment should be charged or credited to this deposit account. <u>A duplicate of this sheet is enclosed</u>.

(e) [] is filed after the mailing date of either a final rejection or a notice of allowance, whichever occurred first, and is accompanied by the fee (\$130) set forth in 37 CFR \$1.17(i)(1) and a certification as specified in 37 CFR \$1.97(e), as checked below. This document is to be considered as a petition requesting consideration of the information disclosure statement. The U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is hereby authorized to charge Deposit Account No. 07-0630 in the amount of \$130.00 to cover the cost of this Information Disclosure Statement. Any deficiency or overpayment should be charged or credited to this deposit account. <u>A duplicate of this sheet is enclosed</u>.

[If either of boxes (d) or (e) is checked above, the following "certification" under 37 CFR \$1.97(e) may need to be completed.] The undersigned certifies that:

- Each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication mailed from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of this information disclosure statement.
- [] No item of information contained in this information disclosure statement was cited in a communication mailed from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application or, to the knowledge of the undersigned after making reasonable inquiry, was known to any individual designated in 37 CFR §1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of this information disclosure statement.

A list of the patent(s) or publication(s) is set forth on the attached Form PTO-1449 (Modified). A copy of the items on PTO-1449 is supplied herewith:

[X] each [] none [] only those listed below:

Those patent(s) or publication(s) which are marked with an asterisk (*) in the attached PTO-1449 form are not supplied because they were previously cited by or submitted to the Office in a prior application Serial No. , filed and relied upon in this application for an earlier filing date under 35 USC §120.

A concise explanation of relevance of the items listed on PTO-1449 is:

- [X] not given
- [] given for each listed item
- given for only non-English language listed item(s) [Required]
- In the form of an English language copy of a Search Report from a foreign patent office, issued in a counterpart application, which refers to the relevant portions of the references.

Received from < +16509529881 > at 12/12/01 2:55:22 PM [Eastern Standard Time]

BI Exhibit 1002

From-Genentech Legal

08/146,206

Page 3

The Examiner is reminded that a "concise explanation of the relevance" of the submitted prior art "may be nothing more than identification of the particular figure or paragraph of the patent or publication which has some relation to the claimed invention," MPEP \$609.

While the information and references disclosed in this Information Disclosure Statement may be "material" pursuant to 37 CFR §1.56, it is not intended to constitute an admission that any patent, publication or other information referred to therein is "prior art" for this invention unless specifically designated as such.

In accordance with 37 CFR §1.97(g), the filing of this Information Disclosure Statement shall not be construed to mean that a search has been made or that no other material information as defined in 37 CFR §1.56(a) exists. It is submitted that the Information Disclosure Statement is in compliance with 37 CFR §1.98 and MPEP §609 and the Examiner is respectfully requested to consider the listed references.

A copy of a document pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 10.9(b) is attached as proof of the authorization of the undersigned to prosecute the above-mentioned application. The original of this document is on file in the Office of Enrollment and Discipline.

Respectfully submitted, GENENTECH, NC. By: Wendy M. Lee

Date: August 1, 1995

460 Pt. San Bruno Blvd. So. San Francisco, CA 94080-4990 Phone: (415) 225-1994 Fax: (415) 952-9881

Received from < +16509529881 > at 12/12/01 2:55:22 PM [Eastern Standard Time]

In re Application of: Paul J. Carter et al. Serial No.: 08/146,206 Flied On: November 17, 1993 Hand Delivered On: ___ February 1999 Docket No.: P0709P1 By: Wendy M. Lee Reg. No.: 40,378

The following has been received in the U.S. Patent Office on the date stamped:

Information Disclosure Statement

Form 1449 with 38_ References

Communication with Exhibit A and two priority documents

Cenilicate of Hand Delivery

In re Application of: Paul J. Carter et al. Serial No.: 08/146,205 Filed On: November 17, 1993 Hand Delivered On: ____ February 1899

Docket No.: P0709P1 By: Wendy M. Lee Reg. No.: 40,378

The following has been received in the U.S. Patent Office on the date stamped;

- Information Disclosure Statement Form 1449 with 38 References
- X
- Communication with Exhibit A and two priority documents Certificato of Hand Delivery X

12:21 NA 1-023 65 0062/00

					Athe Desket Na	I Se	rial No.
FORM	PTO-1	449		U.S. Dept. of Commerce	Atty Docket No.		/146,206
				Patent and Trademark Office	Applicant		
LIST	OF DIS	CLOSURES CITED B	Y APPLICANT		Carter et al.		
(U)	se sev	eral sheets if necessary)		Filing Date 17 Nov 199	Gro	06
	_			U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS	17 860 133		
xaminer	-			U.S. PATENT DOCOMENTS	- 1	-	1
itials		Document Number	Date	Name	Class	Subclass	Filing Date
	225	5,714,350	03.02.98	Co et al.			13.01.95
1.11	226	5,821,337	13.10.98	Carter et al.	- And Inc.		1. 2. 3
				FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENT	S		
xaminer	1.00	1	a				Translation
nitials	1	Document Number	Date	Country	Class	Subclass	Yes No
	227	0 460 167 81	11.12.91	EPO		_	
- II	228	0 519 596 Al	23.12.92	EPO			1 1 1
	229	0 592 105 A1	13.04.94	EPO			
	230	120,694	03.10.84	EFO			
	231	125,023 AL	14.11.84	EPO			
		368,684	16.05.90	EPO			
	1.000	94/11509	26.05.94	PCT			
		WO 89/09622	00.00.00	PCT	1000		1
	1500	WD 92/11383	09.07.92	PCT			D.
	236	2 188941	14.10.87	UNITED KINGDOM		A	
-			OTHER DISC	LOSURES (Including Author, Title, Date,	Pertinent Pages, e	etc.)	
	-	"Blosym Technolog	lies' in New P	roducts, Chemical Design Automat:	ion 3. (December	1988)	
	237					and the second	
	238	*Polygen Corporat	ion" in New P	roducts, Chemical Design Automat:	ion 3 · (November	1988)	
	238						
	239	Adair et al., 'Hu Hybridomas 5:41-4		the murine anti-human CD3 monoc	lonal antibody (DKT3 Hum	Antibod.
- 11		Chothia et al., '	Principles of	protein-protein recognition" No.	ture 256:705-708	(1975)	
	240						
		Chochia et al., "	Transmission	of conformational change in insu.	lin' Nacure 302	500-505 (3	1983)
	241	a set of a set of					
	242	Corti et al., "Id J. Mol. Biol. 235	1010pe Decerm	ining Regions of a Mouse Monoclo	hal Antibody and	Its Human	nized Versions'
1	494						
				lonal Antibody Mc3 Humanization t tion" Cancer Research Supplement			Consensus and i
	243	Cours of all the	manifestion of	KCAG3, an Anti-Human Carcinoma	antihadut Wibri	11.017	
	243	Couro ec ar., no	manización or	ACTOS, an Anci-Aument Caroinonal A	ALLIGODA- HADLIC	10ma 13:21:	-219 (1994)
	243	and the second se		the state of the s	manuscrassiv of	Milbinla	Man I ama t Mho
		Filie AF AL	dineered Anti	-CD18 Manaclanal Antibadies for	mandred cuter aby a	. Burrante	ayeroing The
	244	Ellis et al., 'En Journal of Immuno		-CD38 Monoclonal Antibodies for : -937 (1995)			
	244	Journal of Immuno	logy pps. 925	-937 (1995)	ones" The Journa	1 of Biold	cical Chemistr
	244 245	Journal of Immuno	logy pps. 925		ones" The Journs	l of Biold	ocical Chemistr
	244 245 246	Journal of Immuno Histor et al., "E 257:1516-1522 (19 Lesk, Arthur M.,	Volution of R (82) *Now Differen	-937 (1995) uman Immunoglobulin K J Region Go t Amino Acid Sequences Determine	Similar Protein		
Examine	244 245 246 247	Journal of Immuno Histor et al., "E 257:1516-1522 (19 Lesk, Arthur M.,	Volution of R (82) *Now Differen	-937 (1995) uman Immunoglobulin K J Region Go	Similar Protein		

Received from < +16509529881 > at 12/12/01 2:55:22 PM [Eastern Standard Time]

830 of 1033

USCOMM-DC 80-398.

BI Exhibit 1002

12-12-01 11:51am From-Genentech Legal

. .



T-282 P.012/012 F-366

Sheet 2 of 2

ORM PTO-1		Atty Docket No. P0709P1	Serial No. 08/146,206
and a second	Patent and Trademark Office	Applicant	
LIST OF DI	SCLOSURES CITED BY APPLICANT	Carter et al.	
(Use sev	reral sheets if necessary)	Filing Date 17 Nov 1993	Group 1806
	OTHER DISCLOSURES (Including Author, Title, Date,	Pertinent Pages, etc.)	1
248	Matsumura et al., "Hydrophobic stabilization in T4 lysozyme det substitutions of Ile 3" <u>Nature</u> 334:406-410 (1988)	ermined directly by	multiple
249	Morrison, S. L., "Transfectomes Provide Novel Chimeric Antibodi 1985)	es" <u>Science</u> 229:120	2-1207 (September 20
250	Nakarani et al., 'Humanization of mouse anti-human IL-2 recepto 7:435-443 (1994)	r antibody 9-810- J	Protein Engineering
251	Ohtomo et al., "Humanization of Mouse ONS-M21 Antibody with the Molecular Immunology 32:407-415 (1995)	Aid of Hybrid Vari	able Regions*
252	Fadlan et al., "Model-Building Studies of Antigen-Binding Sites C.S. Marbor Symp. Quant. Biol. 41:627-637 (1977)	: The Hapten-Bindin	ng Site of MOPC-315"
253	Rodrigues et al., "Engineering a humanized bispecific F(ab')2 f Int. J. Cancer (Suppl.) 7:45-50 (1992)	ragment for improve	ed binding to T cells
254	Sha et al., "A Heavy-Chain Grafted Antibody that Recognizes the Biotherapy 9:341-349 (1994)	Tumor-Associated	AG72 Antigen" <u>Cancer</u>
255	Tempest et al., "Identification of framework residues required reshaping of a monoclonal antibody against the glycoprotein gB Macromol. 17:37-42 (1995)	of human cycomegal	ovirus' Int. J. Biol
256	Tramontano, "Structural Determinants of the Conformations of Me 6:382-394 (1989)	dium-Sized Loops in	Proteins" <u>Proteins</u>
257	Uchiyama et al., "A Monoclonal Antibody (ANTI-Tac) Reactive wit T Cells" <u>Journal of Immunology</u> 126:1393-1397 (1981)	h Accivated and Fur	nctionally Mature Hu
258	Vincenti et al., "Interleukin-2-Receptor Blockade with Daclizum Transplantation" <u>New Engl. J. Med.</u> 338:161-165 (1998)	ab to Prevent Acute	e Rejection in Renal
259	Vitetta et al., "Redesigning Nature's Poisons to Create Anti-Tu	mor Reagents" <u>Scien</u>	nce 238:1098-1104 (1
260	Waldmann et al., "Interleukin 2 Receptor (Tac Antigen) Expressi Leukemia" <u>Cancer Research</u> 45:4559s-4562s (1985)		
261	Weldmann, Thomas A., "The Structure, Function, and Expression of Malignant Lymphocytes" <u>Science</u> 232:727-732 (1986)		
262	Wu et al., "An Analysis of the Sequences of the Variable Region Light Chains and Their Implications for Antibody Complementarit 132:211-250 (1970)	s of Bence Jones Pr y" Journal of Exper	roteins and Myeloma rimental Medicine
111			
34			
aminer		de Canaldon I	
		ate Considered	
xaminer: In 1 not in con	itial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP formance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication	609; draw line through to applicant.	citation
	nix		USCOMM-DC 80-39

831 of 1033

 $\left(\right)$





UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE United States Patent and Trademark Office Address: COMMISSIONER OP PATENTS AND TRADEMARKS Washington, D.C. 20231 www.uspio.gov

NOTICE OF ALLOWANCE AND FEE(S) DUE

SCO, CA 940804990			
		ART UNIT	CLASS-SUBCLASS
FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	DATE MAILED: 12/18/2001	530-387300 CONFIRMATION NO
11/17/1993	PAUL J. CARTER	709P1	3992
			FILING DATE FIRST NAMED INVENTOR ATTORNEY DOCKET NO. 11/17/1993 PAUL J. CARTER 709P1

TOTAL CLAIMS	APPLN, TYPE	SMALL ENTITY	ISSUE FEE	PUBLICATION FEE	TOTAL FEE(S) DUE	DATE DUE
82	nonprovisional	NO	\$1280	\$0	\$1280	03/18/2002

THE APPLICATION IDENTIFIED ABOVE HAS BEEN EXAMINED AND IS ALLOWED FOR ISSUANCE AS A PATENT.

<u>PROSECUTION ON THE MERITS IS CLOSED.</u> THIS NOTICE OF ALLOWANCE IS NOT A GRANT OF PATENT RIGHTS. THIS APPLICATION IS SUBJECT TO WITHDRAWAL FROM ISSUE AT THE INITIATIVE OF THE OFFICE OR UPON PETITION BY THE APPLICANT. SEE 37 CFR 1.313 AND MPEP 1308.

THE ISSUE FEE AND PUBLICATION FEE (IF REQUIRED) MUST BE PAID WITHIN <u>THREE MONTHS</u> FROM THE MAILING DATE OF THIS NOTICE OR THIS APPLICATION SHALL BE REGARDED AS ABANDONED. <u>THIS STATUTORY</u> <u>PERIOD CANNOT BE EXTENDED</u>. SEE 35 U.S.C. 151.

HOW TO REPLY TO THIS NOTICE:

I. Review the SMALL ENTITY status shown above. If the SMALL ENTITY is shown as YES, verify your current SMALL ENTITY status:	If the SMALL ENTITY is shown as NO:
A. If the status is changed, pay the PUBLICATION FEE (if required) and twice the amount of the ISSUE FEE shown above and notify the United States Patent and Trademark Office of the change in status, or	A. Pay TOTAL FEE(S) DUE shown above, or
B. If the status is the same, pay the TOTAL FEE(S) DUE shown above.	B. If applicant claimed SMALL ENTITY status before, or is now claiming SMALL ENTITY status, check the box below and enclose the PUBLICATION FEE and 1/2 the ISSUE FEE shown above.
	Applicant claims SMALL ENTITY status. See 37 CFR 1.27.

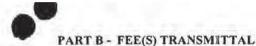
II. PART B - FEE(S) TRANSMITTAL should be completed and returned to the United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) with your ISSUE FEE and PUBLICATION FEE (if required). Even if the fee(s) have already been paid, Part B - Fee(s) Transmittal should be completed and returned. If you are charging the fee(s) to your deposit account, section "4b" of Part B - Fee(s) Transmittal should be completed and an extra copy of the form should be submitted.

III. All communications regarding this application must give the application number. Please direct all communications prior to issuance to Box ISSUE FEE unless advised to the contrary.

IMPORTANT REMINDER: Utility patents issuing on applications filed on or after Dec. 12, 1980 may require payment of maintenance fees. It is patentee's responsibility to ensure timely payment of maintenance fees when due.

Page 1 of 3

PTOL-85 (REV. 07-01) Approved for use through 01/31/2004.





Complete and mail this form, together with applicable fee(s), to:

Box ISSUE FEE Assistant Commissioner for Patents Washington, D.C. 20231

MAILING INSTRUCTIONS: This form should be used for transmitting the ISSUE FEE and PUBLICATION FEE (if required). Blocks 1 through 4 should be completed where appropriate. All further correspondence including the Patent, advance orders and notification of maintenance fees will be mailed to the current correspondence address as indicated unless corrected below or directed otherwise in Block 1, by (a) specifying a new correspondence address; and/or (b) indicating a separate "FEE ADDRESS" for maintenance fee notifications. CURRENT CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS (Note: Legibly mark-up with any corrections or use Block 1)
7590 12/18/2001 GENENTECH, INC.
1 DNA WAY
SOUTH SAN FRANCISCO, CA 940804990 Note: The certify that this fee(s) Transmittal is being deposited with the United States Postal Service with sufficient postage for first class mail in an envelope addressed to the Box Issue Fee address above on the date indicated below.

				(corpositor s mane)
				(Signature)
				(Date)
APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
08/146,206	11/17/1993	PAUL J. CARTER	709P1	3992

TITLE OF INVENTION: METHOD FOR MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES

TOTAL CLAIMS	APPLN. TYPE	SMALL ENTITY	ISSUE FEE	PUBLICATION FEE	TOTAL FEE(S) DUE	DATE DUE
82	nonprovisional	NO	\$1280	\$0	\$1280	03/18/2002
EXA	MINER	ART UNIT	CLASS-SUBCL	ASS		
DAVIS, N	MINH TAM B	1642	530-387300)		
1. Change of correspor CFR 1.363). Use of PT but not required.	idence address or indicat O form(s) and Customer	tion of "Fee Address" (37 r Number are recommended,	the names of up	to 3 registered patent att lternatively, (2) the name	lorneys	
Change of correspondence Address form PTO/S	ondence address (or Cha B/122) attached.	nge of Correspondence	attorney or age	ving as a member a reg nt) and the names of u	p to 2 2	
"Fee Address" indi PTO/SB/47) attached	cation (or "Fee Address'	" Indication form	registered patent is listed, no name	attorneys or agents. If no will be printed.	3	

3. ASSIGNEE NAME AND RESIDENCE DATA TO BE PRINTED ON THE PATENT (print or type)

PLEASE NOTE: Unless an assignee is identified below, no assignee data will appear on the patent. Inclusion of assignee data is only appropriate when an assignment has been previously submitted to the USPTO or is being submitted under separate cover. Completion of this form is NOT a substitute for filing an assignment. (A) NAME OF ASSIGNEE (B) RESIDENCE: (CITY and STATE OR COUNTRY)

4a. The following fee(s) are enclosed:	4b. Payment of Fee(s):				
Issue Fee	A check in the amount of the	fee(s) is enclosed.			
Publication Fee	Payment by credit card. Form	PTO-2038 is attached.			
Advance Order - # of Copies	The Commissioner is hereby authorized by charge the required fee(s), or credit any overpay Deposit Account Number(enclose an extra copy of this form).				
The COMMISSIONER OF PATENTS AND TRADE	MARKS is requested to apply the Issue Fee and P	ublication Fee (if any) to the application identified abo	ve.		
(Authorized Signature)	(Date)	ublication Fee (if any) to the application identified abo	we.		
(Authorized Signature)	(Date) irred) will not be accepted from anyone agent; or the assignce or other party in Patent and Trademark Office. ke 0.2 hours to complete. Time will vary comments on the amount of time required nformation Officer, United States Patent O NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED VD THIS FORM TO: Box Issue Fee, C, 20231	ublication Fee (if any) to the application identified abo	.ve.		

PTOL-85 (REV. 07-01) Approved for use through 01/31/2004. OMB 0651-0033 U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

		Un	ITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COM ited States Patent and Trademark Off frees: COMMISSIONER OF PATENTS AND T. Washington, D.C. 20231 www.uapto.gov	ice
APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO
08/146,206	11/17/1993	PAUL J. CARTER	709P1	3992
7	590 12/18/2001		EXAMINE	ER
GENENTECH, I	NC.		DAVIS, MINH	І ТАМ В
DNA WAY OUTH SAN FRA	NCISCO, CA940804990		ART UNIT	PAPER NUMBER
			1642 DATE MAILED: 12/18/2001	

Determination of Patent Term Extension or Adjustment under 35 U.S.C. 154 (b) (application filed prior to June 8, 1995)

This patent application was filed prior to June 8, 1995, thus no Patent Term Extension or Adjustment applies.

Applicant will be able to obtain more detailed information by accessing the Patent Application Information Retrieval (PAIR) system. (http://pair.uspto.gov)

Page 3 of 3

and a state of the second	Application No. 08/146,20	6	Applicent	200 F	rter et a	al
Notice of Allowability	Examiner MINH T	AM: D	AVIS	Art Unit 164	12	
The MAILING DATE of this communication	appears on the cove	shee	at with the	correspond	lence a	ddress
Il claims being allowable, PROSECUTION ON THE MER or previously mailed), a Notice of Allowance and Issue I HIS NOTICE OF ALLOWABILITY IS NOT A GRANT OF I ne initiative of the Office or upon petition by the applica	Fee Due or other appro PATENT RIGHTS. This	priate appl	communic	ation will be ubject to wit	mailed	in due course
. X This communication is responsive to interview	on 12/11/01					
. X The allowed claim(s) is/are 43-105, 113-128,	renumbered as 1-82	7				
The drawings filed ona	re acceptable as form	nal di	awings.			
. Acknowledgement is made of a claim for fore	ign priority under 35	U.S.0	C. § 119(a)-(d).		
a) All b) Some* c) None of th						
1. Certified copies of the priority document	ts have been receive	d.				
2. Certified copies of the priority document	ts have been receive	d in A	pplication	No		
3. Copies of the certified copies of the price application from the International Bur	rity documents have reau (PCT Rule 17.2)	been a)).	received	in this natio	nal stag	ge
*Certified copies not received:					_	*
Acknowledgement is made of a claim for dom	estic priority under 3	5 U.S	S.C. § 119	(e).		
XTENDABLE FOR SUBMITTING NEW FORMAL DRAWIN or complying with the REQUIREMENT FOR THE DEPUS	NGS, OR A SUBSTITU 17 OF BIOLOGIGAL-M	TE OA	ATH OR DE AL is exten	dable under	37 CFR	1.1.96(a)
Note the attached EXAMINER'S AMENDMENT reason(s) why the oath or declaration is defi	or NOTICE OF INFO	RMA		ATION (PTO)-152) \	which gives
reason(s) why the oath or declaration is defi	T or NOTICE OF INFO cient. A SUBSTITUT	RMA		ATION (PTO)-152) \	which gives
reason(s) why the oath or declaration is defi	T or NOTICE OF INFO cient. A SUBSTITUT /INGS	RMA E OA	TH OR DE	ATION (PTO CLARATION)-152) v N IS RE	which gives QUIRED.
reason(s) why the oath or declaration is defi Applicant MUST submit NEW FORMAL DRAW	F or NOTICE OF INFO cient. A SUBSTITUT /INGS of Draftsperson's Pate	RMA E OA	TH OR DE	ATION (PTO CLARATION)-152) v N IS RE	which gives QUIRED.
reason(s) why the oath or declaration is defi X Applicant MUST submit NEW FORMAL DRAM (a) X including changes required by the Notice of	F or NOTICE OF INFO cient. A SUBSTITUT /INGS of Draftsperson's Pate 12	RMA E OA	TH OR DE	ATION (PTO CLARATION)-152) v N IS RE 948) att	which gives QUIRED.
 reason(s) why the oath or declaration is defined. Applicant MUST submit NEW FORMAL DRAM (a) Including changes required by the Notice of 1) Including changes required by the propose (b) Including changes required by the propose 	F or NOTICE OF INFO cient. A SUBSTITUT /INGS of Draftsperson's Pate <u>12</u> . d drawing correction	RMA E OA ent D	TH OR DE	ATION (PTO CLARATION view (PTO-9)-152) v N IS RE 948) att	which gives QUIRED. tached ch has been
 reason(s) why the oath or declaration is defined as the including changes required by the Notice of the including changes required by the Notice of the including changes required by the propose approved by the examiner. (c) including changes required by the attached 	F or NOTICE OF INFO cient. A SUBSTITUT /INGS of Draftsperson's Pate <u>12</u> . d drawing correction d Examiner's Amende (see 37 CFR 1.84(c	PRMA E OA ent Di filed nent/) sho	TH OR DE	ATION (PTO CLARATION view (PTO-9 or in the Of)-152) v N IS RE 948) att , whic fice act drawing	which gives QUIRED. tached th has been tion of gs. The
 reason(s) why the oath or declaration is defined. Applicant MUST submit NEW FORMAL DRAW (a) Including changes required by the Notice of 1) hereto or 2) Including changes required by the propose approved by the examiner. (b) including changes required by the propose approved by the examiner. (c) including changes required by the attached Paper No Identifying indicia such as the application number 	F or NOTICE OF INFO cient. A SUBSTITUT /INGS of Draftsperson's Pate <u>12</u> . d drawing correction d Examiner's Amende (see 37 CFR 1.84(c a transmittal letter a	PRMA E OA ent D filed nent/) sho addre	TH OR DE rawing Rev Comment uld be wri ssed to the	ATION (PTO CLARATION view (PTO-9 or in the Of tten on the official Dr)-152) N N IS RE 948) att , whic fice act drawing aftsper	which gives QUIRED. tached th has been tion of gs. The son.
reason(s) why the oath or declaration is defi X Applicant MUST submit NEW FORMAL DRAW (a) I including changes required by the Notice of 1) hereto or 2) I to Paper No. (b) including changes required by the propose approved by the examiner. (c) including changes required by the attached Paper No. Identifying indicia such as the application number drawings should be filed as a separate paper with Note the attached Examiner's comment regard ny reply to this letter should include, in the upper of UMBER). If applicant has received a Notice of Allow	F or NOTICE OF INFO cient. A SUBSTITUT /INGS of Draftsperson's Pate <u>12</u> . d drawing correction d Examiner's Amende (see 37 CFR 1.84(c a a transmittal letter a ding REQUIREMENT ight hand corner, the wance and Issue Fee	PRMA E OA ent D filed nent/) sho addre =OR	TH OR DE rawing Rev Comment uld be wri ssed to the THE DEPO LICATION	ATION (PTO CLARATION view (PTO-9 or in the Of tten on the a Official Dr. SIT OF BIOL NUMBER (S)-152) N N IS RE 948) att , whic fice act drawing aftsper LOGICA SERIES	which gives OUIRED. tached th has been tion of gs. The son. AL MATERIA CODE/SERIA
reason(s) why the oath or declaration is defi Applicant MUST submit NEW FORMAL DRAW (a) including changes required by the Notice of 1) hereto or 2) I to Paper No. (b) including changes required by the propose approved by the examiner. (c) including changes required by the attached Paper No. Identifying indicia such as the application number drawings should be filed as a separate paper with Note the attached Examiner's comment regard ny reply to this letter should include, in the upper of UMBER). If applicant has received a Notice of Allor te NOTICE OF ALLOWANCE should also be include ttachment(s)	F or NOTICE OF INFO cient. A SUBSTITUT /INGS of Draftsperson's Pate <u>12</u> . d drawing correction d Examiner's Amende (see 37 CFR 1.84(c a a transmittal letter a ding REQUIREMENT ight hand corner, the wance and Issue Fee	PRMA E OA ent D filed nent/) sho addre = OR ⁻ APP Due,	TH OR DE rawing Rev Comment uld be wri ssed to the FHE DEPO LICATION the ISSUE	ATION (PTO CLARATION view (PTO-9 or in the Of tten on the a Official Dr. SIT OF BIOL NUMBER (S BATCH NU	0-152) N N IS RE 048) att -, which fice act drawing aftsper LOGICA SERIES JMBER	which gives OUIRED. tached th has been tion of gs. The son. AL MATERIA CODE/SERIA and DATE o
 reason(s) why the oath or declaration is defi Applicant MUST submit NEW FORMAL DRAW (a) Including changes required by the Notice of 1) hereto or 2) Ito Paper No. (b) including changes required by the propose approved by the examiner. (c) including changes required by the attached Paper No Identifying indicia such as the application number drawings should be filed as a separate paper with Note the attached Examiner's comment regarding to this letter should include, in the upper number of MBER). If applicant has received a Notice of Allower NOTICE OF ALLOWANCE should also be included ttachment(s) Notice of References Cited (PTO-892) 	F or NOTICE OF INFO cient. A SUBSTITUT VINGS of Draftsperson's Pate <u>12</u> d drawing correction d Examiner's Amende (see 37 CFR 1.84(c a transmittal letter a ding REQUIREMENT ight hand corner, the wance and Issue Fee ed.	PRMA E OA ent D filed nent/) sho eddre = OR = APP Due, 2 _	TH OR DE rawing Rev Comment uld be wri ssed to the THE DEPO LICATION the ISSUE Notice of In	ATION (PTO CLARATION view (PTO-9 or in the Of tren on the o Official Dr. SIT OF BIOL NUMBER (S BATCH NU)-152) N N IS RE 948) att 948) att 948 100 C	which gives OUIRED. tached th has been tion of gs. The son. AL MATERIA CODE/SERIA and DATE o
 reason(s) why the oath or declaration is defi Applicant MUST submit NEW FORMAL DRAW (a) Including changes required by the Notice of (b) Including changes required by the propose approved by the examiner. (c) Including changes required by the attached Paper No Identifying indicia such as the application number drawings should be filed as a separate paper with In Note the attached Examiner's comment regarding to this letter should include, in the upper number of ALLOWANCE should also be included ttachment(s) Notice of References Cited (PTO-892) Notice of Draftsperson's Patent Drawing Review (PTO 	F or NOTICE OF INFO cient. A SUBSTITUT VINGS of Draftsperson's Pate <u>12</u> d drawing correction d Examiner's Amende (see 37 CFR 1.84(c a a transmittal letter ding REQUIREMENT ight hand corner, the wance and Issue Fee ed.	PRMA E OA ent D filed nent/) sho eddre = OR = APP Due, 2 [] 4 []	TH OR DE rawing Rev Comment uld be wri ssed to the THE DEPO LICATION the ISSUE Notice of In Interview S	ATION (PTO CLARATION view (PTO-9 or in the Of tten on the a Official Dr. SIT OF BIOL NUMBER (S BATCH NU)-152) N N IS RE 948) att , whic fice act drawing aftsper LOGICA SERIES JMBER t Applica D-413), F	which gives OUIRED. tached thas been tion of gs. The son. AL MATERIA CODE/SERIA and DATE o
 reason(s) why the oath or declaration is defined. Applicant MUST submit NEW FORMAL DRAW (a) Including changes required by the Notice of 1) hereto or 2) Ito Paper No. (b) including changes required by the propose approved by the examiner. (c) including changes required by the attached Paper No. Identifying indicia such as the application number drawings should be filed as a separate paper with the Notice of Allow Notice of Allow Notice OF ALLOWANCE should also be included attachment(s) Notice of References Cited (PTO-892) 	F or NOTICE OF INFO cient. A SUBSTITUT VINGS of Draftsperson's Pate <u>12</u> d drawing correction d Examiner's Amende (see 37 CFR 1.84(c a transmittal letter a ding REQUIREMENT right hand corner, the wance and Issue Fee ed.	PRMA E OA ent D filed nent/) sho eddre = OR = APP Due, 2 _	TH OR DE rawing Rev Comment uld be wri ssed to the THE DEPO LICATION the ISSUE Notice of In Interview S Examiner's	ATION (PTO CLARATION view (PTO-9 or in the Of tten on the official Dr. SIT OF BIOL NUMBER (S BATCH NU formal Patent ummary (PTC Amendment/)-152) N N IS RE 948) att _, which fice act drawiny aftsper LOGICA SERIES JMBER t Applice D-413), F Commer	which gives OUIRED. tached thas been tion of gs. The son. AL MATERIA CODE/SERIA and DATE o

Part of Paner No Car BI Exhibit 1002 Application/Control Number: 08/146,206 Art Unit: 1642

EXAMINER'S AMENDMENT

An examiner's amendment to the record appears below. Should the changes and/or additions be unacceptable to applicant, an amendment may be filed as provided by 37 CFR 1.312. To ensure consideration of such an amendment, it MUST be submitted no later than the payment of the issue fee.

Authorization for this examiner's amendment was given in a telephone interview with Wendy Lee on 12/13/01.

The application has been amended as follows:

In the claims:

Claim 114. Delete "about", and replace it with --- up to ---Delete "tightly", and replace it with --- in the binding affinity ---

Any inquiry concerning this communication or earlier communications from the examiner should be directed to MINH-TAM DAVIS whose telephone number is 703-305-2008. The examiner can normally be reached on 9:30AM-4:00PM.

If attempts to reach the examiner by telephone are unsuccessful, the examiner's supervisor, ANTHONY CAPUTA can be reached on 703-308-3995. The fax phone numbers for the organization where this application or proceeding is assigned are 703-308-4426 for regular communications and 703-308-4426 for After Final communications.

Page 2



Application/Control Number: 08/146,206 Art Unit: 1642

Any inquiry of a general nature or relating to the status of this application or

proceeding should be directed to the receptionist whose telephone number is 703-308-

0916.

MINH TAM DAVIS December 14, 2001

Page 3

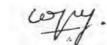
FORM	1 PTO-	1449 SB	A ZUM	U.SDept. of Commerce Patent and Trademark Office	Atty Docket No. P0709P1	Contra Contra	II No. 46,206
		SCLOSURES CITED B	YAPPLICANT		Applicant Carter et al. Filing Date	Grou	1 445
(L	Jse sev	eral sheets if necessary	/)		17 Nov 199	the second se	
				U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS			
aminer tials		Document Number	Date	Name	Class	Subclass	Filing Date
MS	264	5,834,598	(10/11/98 1	Sowman et al.	530	399	
As;	265	Rhodes, P., "Reco 199th American Ch (Apr 1990)	mbinant antibodi	SURES (Including Author, Title, Date, les from CHO cells" <u>ABSTR PAP A</u> Mational Meeting held in Boston	M CHEM SOC (Abs	tract No. 60) from the (1-2):BIOT
_			_			RECE	IVED
					-1-	SEP 0	6 2001
	-				Т	ECH CENTE	R 1600/290
						Sec. 2 - 2	
	1.11						
-	1 - 1					1.7	
-							
-	114						
	1.00						-
_							
1	I.						
	121						
	h = ph						
-			-	A			
-			-				
xamine	r	1. 7	. DAve	Da	te Considered	-1	
Evonie	on lat		14				
re varnin	er, init	iai il reference conside	red, whether or not	citation is in conformance with MPEP (ous; draw line throu	ign citation	

FORM P	TO-1449 F DISCLOSURES CITED B	Y APPLICANT	U.S. Dept. of Commerce	Atty Docket No. P0709P1 Applicant Carter et al.		46,206
(Use	several sheets if necessary)	MAR 1 2 1999	Filing Date 17 Nov 199	Group 3 1642	
			CALLS PATENT DOCUMENTS	1		
kaminer itials	Document Number	Date	Name	Class	Subclass	Filing Date
	263 5,859,205	12.01.99	Adair et al.	530	387.3	07.09.94
Examiner if not in	: Initial if reference conside	unced, whether or dered. Include c	D not citation is in conformance with MPEP opy of this form with next communication	609: draw line thro	125199 ugh citation	

		SCLOSURES CITED B		U.Š. Dept. of Commerce Patent and Trademark Office	Atty Docket No. P0709P1 Applicant Carter et al.	08/	al No. 146,206	
(U	se sev	eral sheets if necessary	()		Filing Date 17 Nov 199	3 Grou 3 180		
-				U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS				
xaminer itials		Document Number	Date	Name	Class	Subclass	A STATE OF A STATE OF	g Date
TK.	225	5,714,350	03.02.98	Co et al.	435	69.6	13.0	1,95
L	226	5,821,337	13.10.98	Carter et al.	530	387,3	<u> </u>	-
				FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS	5	-1	1	
xaminer itials		Document Number	Date	Country	Class	Subclass	Trans Yes	lation No
TOS	227	0 460 167 B1	11.12.91	EPO		-	-	
1	228	0 519 596 A1	23.12.92	EPO			-	
	229	0 592 106 A1	13.04.94	EPO		1	1.	1
		120,694	03.10.84	EPO				
	231	125,023 A1	14.11.84	EPO		1	-	+
		368,684 94/11509	16.05.90 26.05.94	EPO PCT			-	
	234	WO 89/09622	10/1989	PCT				
1	234	WO 92/11383	09.07.92	PCT				-
		2 188941	14.10.87	UNITED KINGDOM				-
4 / 1								
Y		1. · · · · · · ·	1. Y Y		and the second	-		T
Y		1	OTHER DISC	LOSURES (Including Author, Title, Date,	the second se			
Jai	237	"Biosym Technolog	OTHER DISC		the second se			
Jai	237		OTHER DISC les" in New P	LOSURES (Including Author, Title, Date,	on 3" (December	1988)		
Jai	238	"Polygen Corporat	OTHER DISC lies" in New P: lion" in New P: manization of	LOSURES (Including Author, Title, Date, roducts, Chemical Design Automati	on 3" (December on 3" (November	1988) 1988)	ntibod.	
Paris I	238	"Polygen Corporat Adair et al., "Hu <u>Hybridomas</u> 5:41-4	OTHER DISC les" in New P: lon" in New P: manization of 7 (1994)	LOSURES (Including Author, Title, Date, roducts, Chemical Design Automati roducts, Chemical Design Automati	on 3" (December on 3" (November onal antibody O	1988) 1988) KT3" <u>Hum, A</u>	ntibod.	
Paris I	238 239	"Polygen Corporat Adair et al., "Hu <u>Hybridomas</u> 5:41-4 Chothia et al., "	OTHER DISC lies" in New Pr ion" in New Pr manization of 7 (1994) Principles of	LOSURES (Including Authór, Title, Date, roducts, Chemical Design Automati roducts, Chemical Design Automati the murine anti-human CD3 monocl	on 3" (December on 3" (November onal antibody O ure 256:705-708	1988) 1988) KT3" <u>Hum, A</u> (1975)		
Pair I	238 239 240 241	"Polygen Corporat Adair et al., "Hu <u>Hybridomas</u> 5:41-4 Chothia et al., " Chothia et al., "	OTHER DISC lies" in New P: ion" in New P: manization of 7 (1994) Principles of Transmission of iotope Determ	LOSURES (Including Authór; Title, Date, roducts, Chemical Design Automati roducts, Chemical Design Automati the murine anti-human CD3 monocl protein-protein recognition" Nat	on 3" (December on 3" (November onal antibody O ure 256:705-708 in" <u>Nature</u> 302:	1988) 1988) KT3" <u>Hum. A</u> (1975) 500-505 (19	83)	
Pair 1	238 239 240 241 242	"Polygen Corporat Adair et al., "Hu <u>Hybridomas</u> 5:41-4 Chothia et al., " Chothia et al., " Corti et al., "Id <u>J. Mol. Biol.</u> 235 Couto et al., "An	OTHER DISC les" in New P: ion" in New P: manization of 7 (1994) Principles of Transmission of iotope Determ: :53-60 (1994) ti-BA46 Monoc.	LOSURES (Including Author, Title, Date, roducts, Chemical Design Automati roducts, Chemical Design Automati the murine anti-human CD3 monocl protein-protein recognition" <u>Nat</u> of conformational change in insul	on 3" (December on 3" (November onal antibody O ure 256:705-708 in" <u>Nature</u> 302: al Antibody and sing a Novel Po	1988) 1988) KT3" Hum, A (1975) 500-505 (19 Its Humani sitional Co	83) zed Vers	sions"
Pair	238 239 240 241 242	"Polygen Corporat Adair et al., "Hu <u>Hybridomas</u> 5:41-4 Chothia et al., " Chothia et al., " Corti et al., "Id J. Mol. Biol. 235 Couto et al., "An Vivo and in Vitro	OTHER DISC lies" in New Pr ion" in New Pr manization of 7 (1994) Principles of Transmission of 10tope Determ: 53-60 (1994) ti-BA46 Monoc Characterizat	LOSURES (Including Author, Title, Date, roducts, Chemical Design Automati roducts, Chemical Design Automati the murine anti-human CD3 monocl protein-protein recognition" Nat of conformational change in insul ining Regions of a Mouse Monoclon	on 3" (December on 3" (November onal antibody O ure 256:705-708 in" Nature 302: al Antibody and sing a Novel Po 55:1717-1722 (1	1988) 1988) KT3" <u>Hum. A</u> (1975) 500-505 (19 Its Humani sitional Co 995)	83) zed Ver: nsensus	sions" and in
Jai 1	238 239 240 241 242 243 243	"Polygen Corporat Adair et al., "Hu <u>Hybridomas</u> 5:41-4 Chothia et al., " Chothia et al., " Corti et al., "Id J. Mol. Biol. 235 Couto et al., "An Vivo and in Vitro Couto et al., "Hu	OTHER DISC lies" in New P: ion" in New P: manization of 7 (1994) Principles of Transmission of iotope Determ: :53-60 (1994) ti-BA46 Monoc: Characterization of gineered Anti-	LOSURES (Including Author, Title, Date, roducts, Chemical Design Automati roducts, Chemical Design Automati the murine anti-human CD3 monocl protein-protein recognition" Nat of conformational change in insul ining Regions of a Mouse Monoclon lonal Antibody Mc3 Humanization U tion" Cancer Research Supplement KC4G3, an Anti-Human Carcinoma A	on 3" (December on 3" (November onal antibody O ure 256:705-708 in" <u>Nature</u> 302: al Antibody and sing a Novel Po 55:1717-1722 (1 ntibody" <u>Hybrid</u>	1988) 1988) KT3" <u>Hum. A</u> (1975) 500-505 (19 Its Humani sitional Co 995) oma 13:215-	83) zed Vers nsensus 219 (199	and in
Jai	238 239 240 241 242 243 244 244	"Polygen Corporat Adair et al., "Hu <u>Hybridomas</u> 5:41-4 Chothia et al., " Chothia et al., " Corti et al., "Id <u>J. Mol. Biol.</u> 235 Couto et al., "An Vivo and in Vitro Couto et al., "Hu Ellis et al., "En <u>Journal of Immuno</u>	OTHER DISC lies" in New Pr lon" in New Pr manization of 7 (1994) Principles of Transmission of 10tope Determ: 153-60 (1994) ti-BA46 Monoc Characterization of gineered Anti- logy pps. 925 volution of Hu	LOSURES (Including Author, Title, Date, roducts, Chemical Design Automati roducts, Chemical Design Automati the murine anti-human CD3 monocl protein-protein recognition" Nat of conformational change in insul ining Regions of a Mouse Monoclon lonal Antibody Mc3 Humanization U tion" Cancer Research Supplement KC4G3, an Anti-Human Carcinoma A	on 3" (December on 3" (November onal antibody O ure 256:705-708 in" <u>Nature</u> 302: al Antibody and sing a Novel Po 55:1717-1722 (1 ntibody" <u>Hybrid</u> mmunotherapy of	1988) 1988) KT3" Hum. A (1975) 500-505 (19 Its Humani sitional Co 995) oma 13:215- Multiple M	83) zed Vers nsensus 219 (199 yeloma"	and in (14) The
Jai I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I	238 239 240 241 242 243 244 245 246	"Polygen Corporat Adair et al., "Hu Hybridomas 5:41-4 Chothia et al., " Chothia et al., " Corti et al., "Id J. Mol. Biol. 235 Couto et al., "An Vivo and in Vitro Couto et al., "An Vivo and in Vitro Couto et al., "Hu Ellis et al., "En Journal of Immuno Hieter et al., "E 257:1516-1522 (19 Lesk, Arthur M.,	OTHER DISC lies" in New P: ion" in New P: manization of 7 (1994) Principles of Transmission of iotope Determ: :53-60 (1994) ti-BA46 Monoc: Characterization manization of gineered Anti- logy pps. 925- volution of Hu 82)	LOSURES (Including Author, Title, Date, roducts, Chemical Design Automati roducts, Chemical Design Automati the murine anti-human CD3 monocl protein-protein recognition" Nat of conformational change in insul ining Regions of a Mouse Monoclon lonal Antibody Mc3 Humanization U tion" <u>Cancer Research Supplement</u> KC4G3, an Anti-Human Carcinoma A -CD38 Monoclonal Antibodies for I -937 (1995)	on 3" (December on 3" (November onal antibody O ure 256:705-708 in" Nature 302: al Antibody and sing a Novel Po 55:1717-1722 (1 ntibody" <u>Hybrid</u> mmunotherapy of nes" <u>The Journa</u> Similar Protein	1988) 1988) KT3" Hum. A (1975) 500-505 (19 Its Humani sitional Co 995) Oma 13:215- Multiple M 1 of Biolog	83) zed Vers nsensus 219 (199 yeloma" ical Che	and in and in 74) The emistry

12	i .				Sheet 2 of 2			
FORM	PTO-1	449	Cas: Dept. of Commerce	Affy Docket No.	Serial No.			
			Patent and Trademark Office	P0709P1	08/146,206			
			Patent and Trademark Onice	Applicant				
LIST	OF DIS	SCLOSURES CITED BY APPLICANT	the second se	Carter et al.				
01		eral sheets if necessary)		Filing Date	Group			
10	30 307	eral sheets ii hevessaryy		17 Nov 1993	1806			
			ES (Including Author, Title, Date					
Az'	248	Matsumura et al., "Hydrophobic stabil substitutions of Ile 3" <u>Nature</u> 334:40	lization in T4 lysozyme de 06-410 (1988)	termined directly by	multiple			
(249	Morrison, S. L., "Transfectomas Prov 1985)	de Novel Chimeric Antibod	ies" <u>Science</u> 229:120	2-1207 (September 2)			
	250	Nakatani et al., "Humanization of mov 7:435-443 (1994)	ise anti-human IL-2 recepto	or antibody B-B10" P	rotein Engineering			
	251	Ohtomo et al., "Humanization of Mouse Molecular Immunology 32:407-416 (1999		e Aid of Hybrid Vari	able Regions"			
	252	Padlan et al., "Model-Building Studie C.S. Harbor Symp, Quant. Biol. 41:52	2-637 (1977) 1-637 (1977)		g Site of MOPC-315"			
	253	Rodrigues et al., "Engineering a huma Int. J. Cancer (Suppl.) 7:45-50 (1993	2)					
	254	Sha et al., "A Heavy-Chain Grafted An <u>Biotherapy</u> 9:341-349 (1994)						
	255	Tempest et al., "Identification of fr reshaping of a monoclonal antibody ag <u>Macromol.</u> 17:37-42 (1995) Tramontano, "Structural Determinants	gainst the glycoprotein gB	of human cytomegalo	virus" <u>Int. J. Bio</u>			
	256	6:382-394 (1989)						
	257	Uchiyama et al., "A Monoclonal Antibo T Cells" <u>Journal of Immunology</u> 126:1 Vincenti et al., "Interleukin-2-Recept	393-1397 (1981)					
	258	Transplantation" New Engl. J. Med. 3: Vitetta et al., "Redesigning Nature's	38:161-165 (1998)	2 C L C C L RADA				
	259							
	260	Waldmann et al., "Interleukin 2 Recep Leukemia" <u>Cancer Research</u> 45:4559s-49	562s (1985)					
	261	Waldmann, Thomas A., "The Structure, Function, and Expression of Interleukin-2 Receptors on Normal and Malignant Lymphocytes" <u>Science</u> 232:727-732 (1986)						
Y	262	Wu et al., "An Analysis of the Sequer Light Chains and Their Implications 1 132:211-250 (1970)						
	1		a Sector					
-								
kamine	er	M.T. DAUS	10	Date Considered	A			
	-	Mal. Shus	the state of the s	12/04/00	1			

USCOMM-DC 80-398.



From-Genentech Legal

12-12-01

11:50am

.

1

Attachent # 12 t'l)

T-282 P.006/012 F-366

+1 650 952 9881

Sheet 1 of 1

FORM PTO-1449			U.S. Dept. of Commerce Patent and Trademark Office	Atty Docket No. 2070921 Applicant	08/	Serial No. 08/146,205	
LIST OF DISCLOSURES CITED BY APPLICANT		Ģ	Carter et al. Filing Date	Grou	10		
(Use several sheets if necessary)				17 Nov 199			
minarl	1		FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENT	5		Transk	atina
aminer jals	Document Number	Date	Country	Class	Subclass	Yes	No
3 79	WO 92/04381	19.03.92	PCT				
80	WO 92/05274 WO 92/15683	02.04.92	PCT			-	-
aminer Examiner: In f not in con	M.T. Mitial if reference consider formance and not consi	DAU ared, whether or in dered. Include co	The station is in conformance with MPEP appy of this form with next communication	Date Considered / 609; draw line thro to applicant.		27 COMM-DC	80-39

842 of 1033

BI Exhibit 1002

				1 0 1 0 V 6 1 0	19.42		N Daakat Na		rial No.
FORM PTO-1449		B.G. Dept. of Commonde			Atty Docket No.		08/146,206		
		Patent and Trade	Patent and Trademark Office			100			
UST		SCLOSURES CITED B	VAPPIICANT				icant er et al.		
			an an ann an Anna ann an Anna ann an Anna an An			1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1	Date	Gro	UD
(U	se sev	veral sheets if necessary	0				7 Nov 199		
	- 1 - A	1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1				1	7 NOV 199	5 10	
			_	U.S. PATENT DOCU	JMENIS		r	1	1
Examiner	11-6	Document Number	Date	Name			Class	Subclass	Filing Date
nitials		and a start of the Makes of the spin of the				2011 2		-15/38-	25_10.97/C
PN	81	5,225,539 7-4-93	06:07:93	Winter, G.	and the second se	381.3	1		
ph	82	5,530,101 6-25-2	25:06.96	Queen et al.		1387.3	AG1R	39/395	-19-12-90-,
				FOREIGN PATENT	DOCUMENT	S			
Examiner				A 1			0	0.4.4	Translation
nitials		Document Number	Date	Country	y		Class	Subclass	Yes No
pa	83	85058/91 3-30-92	30:03:92	AUSTRALIA			C07K	15/12	
	84	328,404 A1 8-16-		EPO			A61K	39/395	
	85	451,216 B1 /-24-		EPO			C12P	21/08	
	86	WO 91/09966 7-"		PCT			C12P	21/08	
Y	87	WO 91/09968 7-1	-9/ 11:07:91	PCT			C12P	21/08	
PN	88	WO 92/11018 9-7	-92 07:09:92	PCT			A61K	35/14	
	-	1. 1	OTHER DISC	LOSURES (Including Author	Title Date	Pertine	nt Pages e	tc)	11
	-	Carter et al., "H		nerichia coli expressio	and the second s		and the second s	and the second sec	nized antibody
Da/	89	fragment Bio/Tec				201 - C. C. S. S. C.		All and a second second	oda na centera se se
110		Foote et al., "An	tibody Framew	ork Residues Affecting	the Confor	mation	of the H	ypervariab	le Loops" J.
1	90	Mol. Biol. 224:48							
	-	Foote, J., "Human	ized Antibodi	es" Nova acta Leopoldin	a 61(269):	103-11	0 (1989)		
	91								
	1111	Kabat et al., "Se	quences of Pro	oteins of Immunological	Interest'	, Beth	esda, MD:	National I	nstitute of
2.119	92	Health pps. 14-32	(1983)						
				ation of a Mouse Monocl					Importance of
	93	Framework Residue	s on Loop Con	formation" Protein Engi	neering 40	(7):773	-783 (199)1)	
	1.5			Reshaped Human Antibod	lies with H	IV-neu	tralizing	Activity"	Hum. Antibod.
	94	Hybridomas 2:124-	134 (July 199	1)					
-	1.5.5	A REAL PROPERTY OF A REAT	*Expression o	E an Antibody Fv Fragme	ent in Myel	oma Ce	11s* <u>J. M</u>	ol. Biol.	203:825-828
	95	(1988)							
- 11				Monovalent CD3 Antibod	ly which Ca	in Acti	vate Homo	logous Com	plement"
	96			21:2717-2725 (1991)					Contractor of the local division of the loca
				. Expression and Charac J. Immunol. 147(12):43					Directed Again
J	97	and the second second second							
AV	98	and the second se	the second se	uman Monoclonal Antibod ogy 9:266-271 (March 19		oit Hum	an Respir	atory Sync	tial Virus
N	30		MANT COMMON	and show and the first of the	2.5.				
1.271	1								
	1.								
	1								
Evenie					1.0	Inte Car	aidarad		
Examine	il.	Patrick / No	2		D	ate Con	-16-96	6	
*Evamir	ar la			not citation is in conformance	with MOED				
								ugn citation	
	in con	formance and not cons	idered. Include c	opy of this form with next co	mmunication	to appli	cant.		

BI Exhibit 1002

1 Only	PTO-1	449 ·		U.S. Dept. of Commerce	A ocket No.		al No. 146, 206
LICT		SCLOSURES CITED B	VADDUCANT	OIP Patent and Trademark Office	Applicant Carter et al.	1	
		eral sheets if necessary	n ()	AUG 2 6 1998	Filing Date 17 Nov 1993	Grou	
-	-		-	U.S. HATENT DOCUMENTS	1		
aminer tials	1	Document Number	Date	U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS	Class	Subclass	Filing Date
uais	\$215	07/934,373	Date	Carter et al.	01035	00000000	21.08.92
	4.64.5	08/437,642	1.1	Carter et al.		-	-09.05.95
	1.1.1.1.1	09/115,800		Carter et al.		1	15,07.98
Acil	218	5,677,171	14.10.97	Hudziak et al.	435	7.23	05.08.94
"i	219	5,772,997	30.06.98	Hudziak et al.	424	130,1	23.05.95
			OTHER DISC	LOSURES (Including Author, Title, Date,			
R.	220	Brown, Jr. et al. cardiac allograft	, "Anti-Tac-H	, a humanized antibody to the int oc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 88:2663-	erleukin 2 recep		ngs primate
1	221	Casale et al., "U J. Allergy Clin.	se of an anti Immunol. 100:	-IgE humanized monoclonal antibod 110-121 (1997)	ly in ragweed-ind	uced allers	gic rhinitis
1	222			Anti-IgE Monoclonal Antibody on ic Subjects" Am J. Respir. Crit.			
-	-	Mathieson et al.,	"Monoclonal-	Antibody Therapy in Systemic Vasc	ulitis" New Engl	and J of M	Indiaina nos
	223	250-254 (July 199	0)				
	223 224	250-254 (July 199 Presta et al., "H	0) umanization o	f an anti-vascular endothelial gr her disorders" <u>Cancer Research</u> 57	owth factor mono	clonal ant:	body for the
		250-254 (July 199 Presta et al., "H	0) umanization o	f an anti-vascular endothelial gr	owth factor mono	clonal ant:	body for the
		250-254 (July 199 Presta et al., "H	0) umanization o	f an anti-vascular endothelial gr	owth factor mono	clonal ant:	body for the
		250-254 (July 199 Presta et al., "H	0) umanization o	f an anti-vascular endothelial gr	owth factor mono	clonal ant:	body for the
		250-254 (July 199 Presta et al., "H	0) umanization o	f an anti-vascular endothelial gr	owth factor mono	clonal ant:	body for the
		250-254 (July 199 Presta et al., "H	0) umanization o	f an anti-vascular endothelial gr	owth factor mono	clonal ant:	body for the
		250-254 (July 199 Presta et al., "H	0) umanization o	f an anti-vascular endothelial gr	owth factor mono	clonal ant:	body for the
		250-254 (July 199 Presta et al., "H	0) umanization o	f an anti-vascular endothelial gr	owth factor mono	clonal ant:	body for the
		250-254 (July 199 Presta et al., "H	0) umanization o	f an anti-vascular endothelial gr	owth factor mono	clonal ant:	body for the
		250-254 (July 199 Presta et al., "H	0) umanization o	f an anti-vascular endothelial gr	owth factor mono	clonal ant:	body for the
	224	250-254 (July 199 Presta et al., "H therapy of solid	0) umanization o	f an anti-vascular endothelial gr her disorders" <u>Cancer Research</u> 57	owth factor mono (20):4593-4599 (clonal ant:	body for the

USCOMM-DC	80-398
-----------	--------

Country	Filing Date 17 Nov 1993 S Class	Subclass	p Translati Yes	
		Subclass		
Country	Class	Subclass		
13				
			-	
	12/22			
	s in conformance with MPEP form with next communication		is in conformance with MPEP 609; draw line through citation form with next communication to applicant.	12/22/97 is in conformance with MPEP 609; draw line through citation form with next communication to applicant.

MAR 10 COLL W	Patent Docket P0709P
TA TRADE THE UNITED STATES I	PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
In re Application of	Group Art Unit: 1642 Examiner: Minh-Tam Davis
Paul J. Carter et al.	Examiner: Minh-Tam Davis
Serial No.: 08/146,206	Date of Mailing of PTOL 85 entitled "Notice of Allowance and Issue Fee Due"
Filed: November 17, 1993	December 18, 2001
For: METHOD FOR MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES	CERTIFICATE OF MAILING I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service "Express Mail Post Office to Addressee" service under 37 CFR 1.10 on the date indicated below and is addressed to: U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, D.C. 20231-9999 Express Mail Label No. EL 889/330 529 US
	March 18, 2002
	Wendy M. Lee

TRANSMITTAL OF NEW DRAWINGS TO CORRECT INFORMALITIES WITHIN THREE MONTH PERIOD OF RESPONSE SET IN NOTICE **OF ALLOWABILITY (PTOL 37)**

BOX ISSUE FEE Assistant Commissioner of Patents Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

1. To correct the informalities in the drawings as noted in the Draftsman's objections on PTO-948 applicant submits herewith new drawings for this application. Number of sheets of drawings submitted: 9.

2. The three month period of response set in the Notice of Allowability (PTOL 37) expires on March 18, 2002 and this submission is on or before this expiry date.

Respectfully submitted,

ENENTECH, INC.

Date: March 18, 2002

By:

Wendy M. Lee Reg. No. 40,378 Telephone No. (650) 225-1994



846 of 1033

5 1

FIG. 1A

	10	20	30	40	50
4D5	DIVMTQSHKFMSTSV	GDRVSITCKA	SQDVNTAVAW	YQQKPGHSPK	LLIYSASFRYT
HU4D5	DIQMTQSPSSLSAS	 /GDRVTITCRA	SQDVNTAVAW	I I YQQKPGKAPK	LLIYSASFLES
HUV, KI	DIQMTQSPSSLSAS	/GDRVTITCRA	SODVSSYLAW	YOOKPGKAPK	LLIYAASSLES
			VL-CDR1		VL-CDR2

 60
 70
 80
 90
 100

 4D5
 GVPDRFTGNRSGTDFTFTISSVQAEDLAVYYCQQHYTTPPTFGGGTKLEIKRA

 1
 1
 1
 1
 1

 HU4D5
 GVPSRFSGSRSGTDFTLTISSLQPEDFATYYCQQHYTTPPTFGQGTKVEIKRT

 HUVLKI
 GVPSRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLQPEDFATYYCQQYNSLPYTFGQGTKVEIKRT

VL-CDR3

. Phile West

640721

FIG. 1B

	10	20	30	40	50	A
4D5	EVQLQQSGPELVKP	GASLKLSCTA	SGFNIKDTYI	HWVKQRPEQG	LEWIGRI	YPTN
HU4D5	EVQLVESGGGLVQF	GGSLRLSCAA	SGFNIKDTYI	HWVRQAPGKG	LEWVARI	YPTN
HUV _H III	EVQLVESGGGLVQP	GGSLRLSCAAS	GFTFSDYAMS	i SWVRQAPGKGI	LEWVAVIS	SENG
				-		
			W-ODD1		17 -0	0000
			V _H -CDR1		AH-C	CDR2

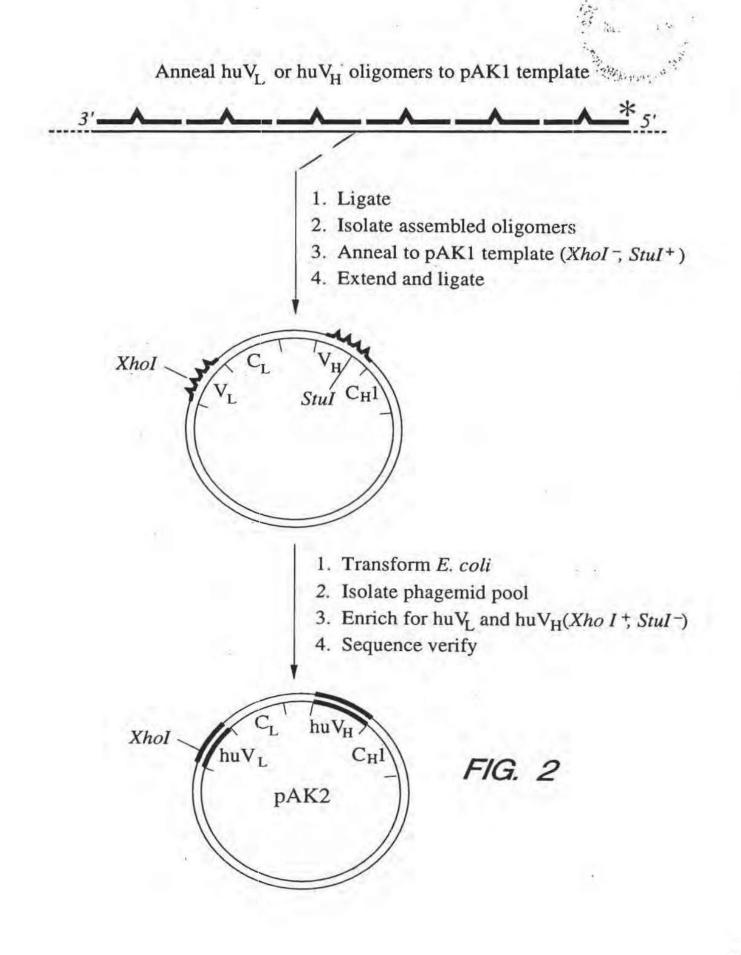
	60	70	80	ABC	90	100ABC
4D5	GYTRYDPKFQ	DKATITADTSS	NTAYLQ	VSRLTSE	DTAVYYCSE	RWGGDGFYAMDYW
				111.11		
HU4D5	GYTRYADSVK	GRFTISADTSK	NTAYLQ	MNSLRAE	DTAVYYCSE	RWGGDGFYAMDVW
	111		- 1			
HUVHIII	SDTYYADSVKC	GRFTISRDDSK	VTLYLQ	MNSLRAE	DTAVYYCAR	DRGGAVSYFDVW

V_H-CDR3

	110
4D5	GQGASVTVSS
HU4D5	GQGTLVTVSS
HUV _H III	GQGTLVTVSS

1

" Public Section





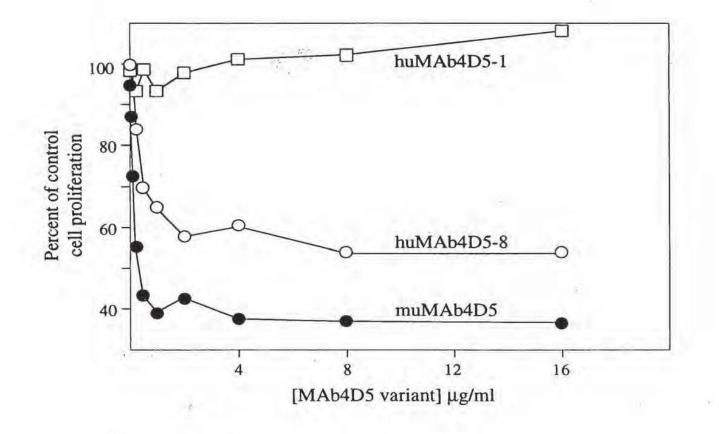
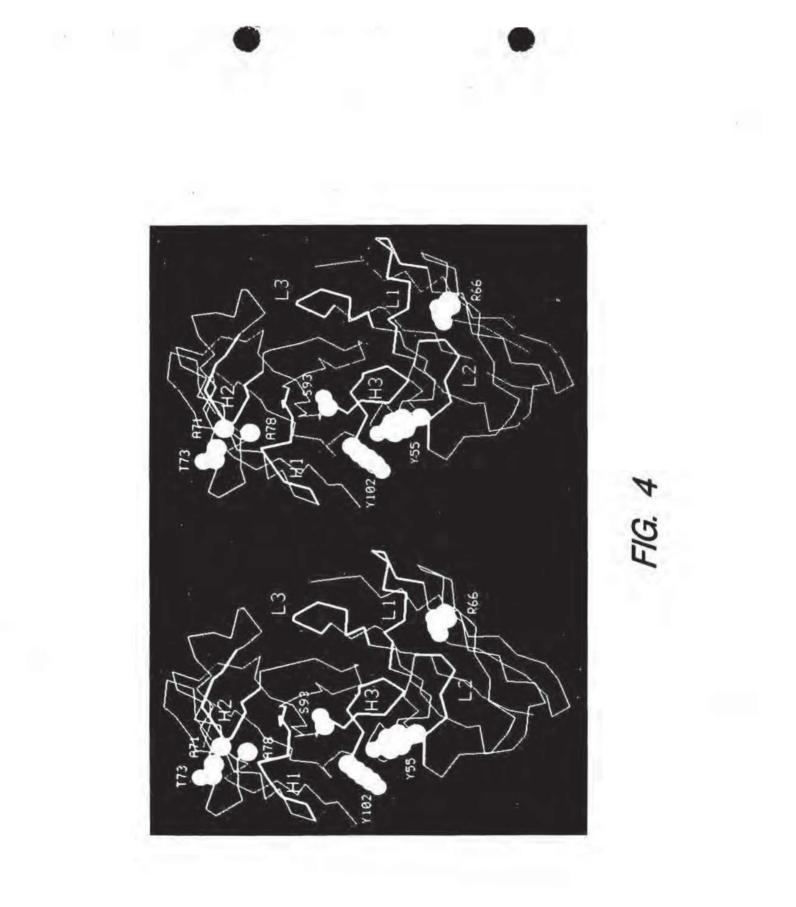


FIG. 3



				1.33	
V _L	10	20	.30	40	
muxCD3	DIQMTQTTSSLSAS	SLGDRVTISC	RASQDIRNY	LNWYQQKP	£***
huxCD3v1	DIQMTQSPSSLSAS	SVGDRVTITC	RASQDIRNY	LNWYQQKP	
huĸI	DIQMTQSPSSLSAS	SVGDRVTITC	<u>RASOSISNY</u> ĈÔR-LÎ	LÄWYQQKP ^	6

	50 60 70 80
muxCD3	DGTVKLLİİYYİİRLİİSGÜPSKFSGSGSGTDYSLTISNLEQ
huxCD3v1	GKAPKLLIYYTSRLESGVPSRFSGSGSGTDYTLTISSLQP
huĸI	GKAPKLLIY <u>ÄÄSŠLES</u> GVPSRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLQP ĈÔR-L2

	90 100
muxCD3	EDIATYFCQQGNTLPWTFAGGTKLEIK
huxCD3v1	EDFATYYCQQGNTLPWTFGQGTKVEIK
huĸI	EDFATYYC <u>QO^YN^SLPWT</u> FGQGTKVEIK
	cÔR-L3

V _H	10	20	30	40
muxCD3	EVQLQQSGPELVKP	GASMKIS	CKASGYSFTGYTMN	WVKQS
huxCD3v1	EVQLVESGGGLVQP	GGSLRLS	CAASGYSFTGYTM	WVRQA
huIII	EVQLVESGGGLVQP	GGSLRLS	CAASGFTFS <u>SYAMS</u>	WVRQA
			^^ĉDR-Ĥ1	

	50 60 70	
muxCD3	HGKNLEWMGLINPYKGVŠTYNOKFKDKATLTVDKSSS	FAY
huxCD3v1	PGKGLEWVALINPYKGVTTYADSVKGRFTISVDKSKN	ray #
HuIII	PGKGLEWVSVISGDGGSTYYADSVKGRFTISRDNSKN	FLY
	^^^CDRH2	

	80	abc	90	100a	bcde	110
muxCD3		LLSLTSE	DSAVYYCA	RŠĠŸŸĠĎŠ	DWYFDV	WGAGTTVTVSS
huxCD3v1	LÇ	MNSLRAE	DTAVYYCA	RSGYYGDS #######		WGQGTLVTVSS
huIII	LÇ	MNSLRAE	DTAVYYCA	RGRVGYSI D E T	SGLYDY S	WGQGTLVTVSS

^^^ĉôr-Ĥ3^^

FIG. 5

BI Exhibit 1002

H52H4-160	FIG.	6A-1	~	10 /QLQQSGPE	LVKPGASVK	ISCKTSGYT	FTE
	MCHECTT	FTUADAD					
pH52-8.0	MGWSCIII			QLVESGGG			50
		10	20	30		40	50
	4	0	50	60	7	0	80
H52H4-160				PKNGGSSHI			
				*****.**			
pH52-8.0				PKNGGTSH			
Provide States		60		8(100
	-						100.00
	9	0	100	110	12	0 1	130
H52H4-160				NYGFDVRY			
	** .*	****	*****	*******	**** **	*******	***
pH52-8.0	OMNSLRAE	DTAVYYC.	ARWRGI	NYGFDVRYI	TOVWGQGTL	VTVSSASTE	GPS
6.94 S 41.54				130			
	14	0	150	160	17	0 1	180
H52H4-160	VFPLAPSS	KSTSGGT.	AALGCI	VKDYFPEP	TVSWNSGA	LTSGVHTFF	AVL
	*****	. *** . *	*****	*******	*******	*******	***
pH52-8.0	VFPLAPCS	RSTSEST	AALGCI	VKDYFPEP	TVSWNSGA	LTSGVHTFF	AVL
	1	60	170	180) 1	90	200
	19	0	200	210	22	0 2	230
H52H4-160	QSSGLYSI	SSVVTVP	SSSLGT	QTYICNVNH	KPSNTKVD	KKVEPKSCI	KTH
	******	*****	** **	*** ***.	*******	* ** * *	
pH52-8.0	QSSGLYSI	SSVVTVT	SSNFGI	QTYTCNVDI	KPSNTKVD	KTVERKCC-	V
				230			
	24	0	250	260	27	0 2	280
H52H4-160	TCPPCPAP	ELLGGPS	VFLFPF	KPKDTLMIS	SRTPEVTCV	VVDVSHEDE	EVK
	******	***	*****	*******	*******	*******	**.
pH52-8.0				KPKDTLMIS			
	250	260		270	280	290	100
	230	200		210	200	230	

A La La La Land

FIG. 6A-2

	290	300	310	320	330
H52H4-160				SVLTVLHQDWL	
pH52-8.0	FNWYVDGMEV 300	HNAKTKPRE 310	EQFNSTFRVVS 320	SVLTVVHQDWL 330	NGKEYKCKVS 340
	340	350	360	370	380
H52H4-160	NKALPAPIEK	TISKAKGQP	REPQVYTLPPS	SREEMTKNQVS	LTCLVKGFYP
pH52-8.0	NKGLPAPIEK 350	TISKTKGQP 360	REPQVYTLPPS 370	SREEMTKNQVS 380	LTCLVKGFYP 390
	390	400	410	420	430
H52H4-160				FFLYSKLTVDK	
pH52-8.0	SDIAVEWESN 400	IGQPENNYKT 410	TPPMLDSDGS1 420	FFLYSKLTVDK 430	SRWQQGNVFS 440
	440	450			
H52H4-160	CSVMHEALHN ********				
pH52-8.0	CSVMHEALHN 450	HYTQKSLSL 460	SPGK		

State Date

FIG. 6B

			10	20	30
H52L6-158		DVQM	TQTTSSLSAS	LGDRVTINCR	ASQDINN
			. ***		
pH52-9.0	MGWSCIILFLVAT	ATGVHSDIQM	TOSPSSLSAS	VGDRVTITCR	ASQDINN
•	10	20	30	40	50
	40	50	60	70	80
H52L6-158	YLNWYQQKPNGTVI	KLLIYYTSTL	HSGVPSRFSG:	SGSGTDYSLT	ISNLDQE
	*******	******	********	*********	**.*. *
pH52-9.0	YLNWYQQKPGKAPI	KLLIYYTSTL	HSGVPSRFSG	SGSGTDYTLT	ISSLQPE
A REAL PROPERTY.	60	70	80	90	100
	÷.				
	90	100	110	120	130
H52L6-158	DIATYFCQQGNTL				
	*.***.*****				
pH52-9.0	DFATYYCQQGNTL		EIKRTVAAPS	VFIFPPSDEQ	LKSGTAS
	110	120	130	140	150
Acres Links	140	150	160		180
H52L6-158	VVCLLNNFYPREAD				

pH52-9.0	VVCLLNNFYPREAD				
	160	170	180	190	200
	190	200	210		
H52L6-158	SKADYEKHKVYAC				
H2210-120	********	and the second second second second second second second second second second second second second second second			
pH52-9.0	SKADYEKHKVYAC				
ph52-5.0	210	220	230		
	210	220	250		

.

vabid OMB contro	The COMMERSING OF PA JENTS AND TRADEMARKS is requested to upply the later For and Publication For (if raw) to the upplication identified above. (Anthonized Martin	1 8 0	 Associated for the setting of the product of the point (your or (you) PLEASE NOTE: Unless an assignee is identified below, so assignee data will appear on the point. Inclusion of assignee data is only appropriate when an assignment been perviously submitted to the USPTO or is being submitted under separate over. Completion of the NOT a substitute for filing an assignment (A) NAME OF ASSIGNEE (A) NAME OF ASSIGNEE (B) RESUMENCE: (CITY, and STATE OR COUNTRY) Genent ech., Inc. (B) NESUMENCE: (CITY, and STATE OR COUNTRY) South San Francisco, California 	Change of correspondence address or indication of "Fee Address" (37, put not required, at not required, D Change of correspondence address (or Change of Correspondence Address form PTO/SB/12) estached. (2) The Address" indication form (2) The Address" indication form (2) The Address" indication form (2) The Address indication form (2) The Address indication (or "Fee Address" indication form (37, 12) estached, (37, 32)		107AL CLADAS APPLN TYPE SMALL ENTITY ISSUE FEE NUBLICATION FEE TOTAL FEE(5) DUE CATE DUE 82 hooprovisional NO \$1250 \$0 \$1260 \$1260 00/18/2002	11/17/1993 PAUL & CARTER TOTAL STORES	Constrained designing, much have hit own constitution of multing Lametry, contrily, that this, Foreign Theoreman is being indexing budgers that this, Foreign Theoreman is being indexing budgers that is being and indexing budgers that is being and indexing budgers that is being and indexing budgers that is being and index that is being and index that is being and index that is being and index that is being and index that is being and index that is being and index that is being and index that the index that is being index that is being and index the means of up to 2 and the means of up to 2 index the means of up to 2 index the means of up to 2 index the means of up to 2 index the means of up to 2 index the means of up to 2 index the means of up to 2 index the means of up to 2 index the means of up to 2 index the means of up to 2 index the means of up to 2 index the means of up to 2 index the means of up to 2 index the means of up to 2 index the means of up to 2 index the means of up to 2 index the means of up to 2 index the means of up to 3 index the means of up to 3 index to many will be primed.
------------------	---	-------	---	---	--	--	---------------------------------------	--

BI Exhibit 1002

PART B - FEE(S) TRANSMITTAL

2 1

19-02



Patent Docket P0709P1

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re Application of

Paul J. Carter et al.

U.S. Patent No.: 6,407,213 B1

Issued: June 18, 2002

For: METHOD FOR MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES

CERTIFICATE OF MAILING I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service as first class mall in an envelope addressed to: Assistant Commissioner of Patents, Washington, D.C. 20231 on 2002 August

Wendy M. Lee

REQUEST FOR CERTIFICATE OF CORRECTION UNDER 37 CFR 1.322

Assistant Commissioner of Patents Washington, D.C. 20231

Certificate AUG 2 7 2002

Sir:

Enclosed is a Certificate of Correction for the above-referenced patent. Because the mistake occurred in the printing of the patent, it is not believed that any fee is required. However, if this is not the case, the Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge the required fee to Deposit Account No. 07-0630. Acceptance of this Certificate of Correction is respectfully requested.

> Respectfully submitted, GENENTECH, INC.

10 2002 Date: August

By:

Wendy M. Lee Reg. No. 40,378 Telephone No. (650) 225-1994

2021



PATENT TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED ST _____TAND TRADEMA OFFICE CERTIFICATE OF CORRECTION

PATENT NO. : U.S. 6,407,213 B1

DATED : June 18, 2002

INVENTOR(S) : Carter et al.

It is certified that error appears in the above-identified patent and that said Letters Patent is her-by corrected as shown below:

In column 88, claim 65, line 63, please delete "63" and insert therefor -- 79--.

MAILING ADDRESS OF SENDER:

Wendy M. Lee



PATENT NO. U.S. 6,407,213

NOTICE RE: CERTIFICATES OF CORRECTION

DATE

Paper No .: 1

D.G. Olson

TO

: Supervisor, Art Unit 1642

SUBJECT : Certificate of Correction Request in Patent No.: 6,407,213

A response to the following question is requested with respect to the accompanying request for a certific of correction.

With respect to the change(s) requested, correcting Office and/or Applicant's errors, should the patent read as shown in the certificate of correction? No new matter should be introduced, nor should the scope or meaning of the claims be changed.

PLEASE COMPLETE THIS FORM AND RETURN WITH FILE, WITHIN 7 DAYS, TO CERTIFICATES OF CORRECTION BRANCH - PK 3-915/922 PALM LOCATION 7580 - TEL. NO. 305-8309

THANK YOU FOR YOUR ASSISTANCE!

See red tog

Note your decision, regarding the changes requested in the Request for Certificate of Correction, placing a check mark (+) in the box that reflects your decision, which corresponds to the question checke above.

Comments: <u>Please</u> enter the concentry. <u>Ey: Micrott - THAN D'A-VI</u> <u>Ex: Micrott - THAN D'A-VI</u> <u>EX: EX: DOCUMENTER</u> <u>EX: EX: DOCUMENTER</u> <u>EX: Micrott - THAN D'A-VI</u>		Su	pervisor	Art Unit
Comments: Please entre He westering. Ey: Migett - THAN D'A-VI	STATE TO DEV PIL	Ent ENVIOLE		DUIDY
	Commen <u>ts:</u>	Please e	ita the Ey	Minett - THAN DA
	YES YES	NO NO	Comn	nents below

UNITED STATES FATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE? CERTIFICATE OF CORRECTION

PATENT NO. : 6,407,213 B1 DATED : June 18, 2002 INVENTOR(S) : Carter et al. Page 1 of 1

It is certified that error appears in the above-identified patent and that said Letters Patent is hereby corrected as shown below:

Column 88, Line 63, please delete "63" and insert therefor -- 79 --.

Signed and Sealed this

Third Day of December, 2002



JAMES E. ROGAN Director of the United States Patent and Trademark Office

	2.
AUG 2 5 2005 EF	and trademark office $\#45$
Tarradet h re Patent of: Paul J. Carter et al § 156	Docket No: 22338-80060 RECEIVED
Patent No.: 6,407,213	Assignee: Genentech, Inc. SEP 1 2 2006
Issued: June 18, 2002	Unit: OPLA TECH CENTER 1600/2900
Application No: 08/146,206	
For: METHOD FOR MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES – Application for § 156 Patent Term Extension Mail Stop Patent Ext. Commissioner for Patents P.O. Box 1450 Alexandria, VA 22313-1450	CERTIFICATE OF MAILING - 37 C.F.R. § 1.10 EXPRESS MAIL LABEL NO. ER 736919973 US I hereby certify this correspondence is being deposited with the U.S. Postal Service with sufficient postage as "Express Mail – Post Office to Addressee" addressed to: Mail Stop Patent Ext., Commissioner for Patents, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450, on the date shown below. David Devenage Aug. 25, 2006 Signature Printed Name
Therandra, TT 22515-1450	

APPLICATION FOR EXTENSION OF PATENT TERM UNDER 35 U.S.C. § 156

Dear Sir:

Applicant, Genentech, Inc., hereby submits this application for extension of the term of United States Letters Patent 6,407,213 under 35 U.S.C. § 156 by providing the following information in accordance with the requirements specified in 37 C.F.R. § 1.740.

Applicant represents that it is the assignee of the entire interest in and to United States Letters Patent No. 6,407,213, granted to Paul J. Carter and Leonard G. Presta (Carter *et al.*) by virtue of an assignment of such patent to Genentech, Inc., recorded June 28, 1994, at Reel 7035, Frame 0272.

1. Identification of the Approved Product [§ 1.740(a)(1)]

The name of the approved product is LUCENTIS[™]. The name of the active ingredient of LUCENTIS[™] is ranibizumab. Ranibizumab is a recombinant humanized monoclonal IgG₁ antibody antigen-binding fragment (Fab) based on a humanized framework with complementarity-determining regions (CDRs) derived from a murine monoclonal antibody that binds to human Vascular Endothelial Growth Factor (VEGF).

Federal Statute Governing Regulatory Approval of the Approved Product [§ 1.740(a)(2)]

The approved product was subject to regulatory review under, *inter alia*, the Public Health Service Act (42 U.S.C. § 201 *et seq.*) and the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act (21 U.S.C. § 355 *et seq.*).

3. Date of Approval for Commercial Marketing [§ 1.740(a)(3)]

LUCENTIS[™] was approved for commercial marketing or use under § 351 of the Public Heath Service Act on June 30, 2006.

4. Identification of Active Ingredient and Certifications Related to Commercial Marketing of Approved Product [§ 1.740(a)(4)]

- (a) The active ingredient of LUCENTIS[™] is ranibizumab. Ranibizumab is a humanized monoclonal IgG₁ antibody antigen-binding fragment produced by an *E. coli* expression system. It contains human framework regions (FRs) and the complementarity-determining regions (CDRs) derived from a murine antibody that binds to VEGF.
- (b) Applicant certifies that ranibizumab had not been approved for commercial marketing or use under the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act, the Public Health Service Act or the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act prior to the approval granted on June 30, 2006 to the present Applicant.
- (c) Ranibizumab has been approved for the treatment of patients with neovascular (wet) age-related macular degeneration. See LUCENTIS[™] product label, provided as Attachment A.
- (d) LUCENTIS[™] was approved for commercial marketing pursuant to § 351 of the Public Health Service Act (42 U.S.C. § 262) under Genentech's existing Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS) U.S. License No. 1048. See LUCENTIS[™] approval letter, provided as Attachment B.

5. Statement Regarding Timeliness of Submission of Patent Term Extension Request [§ 1.740(a)(5)]

Applicant certifies that this application for patent term extension is being timely submitted within the sixty (60) day period permitted for submission specified in 35 U.S.C. § 156(d)(1) and 37 C.F.R. § 1.720(f). The last date on which this application may be submitted is August 28, 2006.

The complete identification of the patent for which an extension is being sought is as follows:

(a)	Names of the inventors:	Paul J. Carter and Leonard G. Presta.
(b)	Patent Number:	6,407,213 ("the '213 patent")
(c)	Date of Issue:	June 18, 2002
(d)	Date of Expiration:	June 18, 2019

7. Copy of the Patent for Which an Extension is Being Sought [§ 1.740(a)(7)]

A copy of U.S. Patent No. 6,407,213 is provided as Attachment C to the present application.

Copies of Disclaimers, Certificates of Correction, Receipt of Maintenance Fee Payment, or Reexamination Certificate [§ 1.740(a)(8)]

- (a) U.S. Patent No. 6,407,213 is not subject to a terminal disclaimer.
- (b) A Certificate of Correction was issued for U.S. Patent No. 6,407,213 on December 3, 2002. A copy of the Certificate of Correction is provided in Attachment D to the present application.
- (c) The first maintenance fee for U.S. Patent No. 6,407,213 has been paid and there are no maintenance fees currently due, as provided in Attachment E.
- (d) U.S. Patent No. 6,407,213 has not been the subject of a reexamination proceeding.

9. Statement Regarding Patent Claims Relative to Approved Product [§ 1.740(a)(9)]

The statements below are made solely to comply with the requirements of 37 C.F.R. § 1.740(a)(9). Applicant notes that, as the M.P.E.P. acknowledges, § 1.740(a)(9) does not require an applicant to show whether or how the listed claims would be infringed, and that this question cannot be answered without specific knowledge concerning acts performed by third parties. As such, these comments are not an assertion or an admission of Applicant as to the scope of the listed claims, or whether or how any of the listed claims would be infringed, literally or under the doctrine of equivalents, by the manufacture, use, sale, offer for sale or the importation of any product.

- (a) At least claims 1-2, 4-5, 25, 29, 62-64, 66-67, 69, 71-73, 75-78, and 80-81 of U.S. Patent No. 6,407,213 claim the active pharmaceutical ingredient in the approved product or a method that may be used to make or use that ingredient.
- (b) Pursuant to M.P.E.P. § 2753 and 37 C.F.R. § 1.740(a)(9), the following explanation is provided which shows how at least one of the above-listed claims of the '213 patent claim the approved product.

(1) Description of the approved product

The approved product is described in Section 11 of the approved label for LUCENTIS[™] as follows, a copy of which is provided as Attachment A.

LUCENTIS[™] (ranibizumab injection) is a recombinant humanized IgG1 kappa isotype monoclonal antibody fragment designed for intraocular use. Ranibizumab binds to and inhibits the biologic activity of human vascular endothelial growth factor A (VEGF-A). Ranibizumab has a molecular weight of approximately 48 kilodaltons and is produced by an *E. coli* expression system in a nutrient medium containing the antibiotic tetracycline. Tetracycline is not detectable in the final product.

LUCENTISTM is a sterile, colorless to pale yellow solution in a single-use glass vial. LUCENTISTM is supplied as a preservative-free, sterile solution in a single-use glass vial designed to deliver 0.05 mL of 10 mg/mL LUCENTISTM aqueous solution with 10 mM histidine HCL, 10% α , α -trehalose dihydrate, 0.01% polysorbate 20, pH 5.5.

Ranibizumab is further characterized in a scientific reference, Chen *et al.* published in 1999 in the Journal of Molecular Biology (JMB) entitled "Selection and Analysis of an Optimized Anti-VEGF Antibody: Crystal Structure of an Affinity-matured Fab in Complex with Antigen."¹ The Chen *et al.* article discusses the lineage of the ranibizumab antibody fragment. In this respect, the article states that "[a] murine monoclonal antibody, A.4.6.1, was found to block VEGF-dependent cell proliferation *in vitro* and to antagonize tumor growth *in vivo.* [Citation omitted]. The murine mAb was previously humanized in Fab form to yield a variant known as Fab-12." [Citation omitted] *See* p. 866, left col., ¶1. The abstract explains that the authors affinity-matured Fab-12 and obtained Fab fragment Y0317, now known as ranibizumab. According to the article, ranibizumab was derived from the humanization and affinity-maturation of a non-human, murine monoclonal antibody that binds to VEGF. The Chen *et al.* article also describes the humanized structure of ranibizumab. *See, e.g.*, Figure 1.

¹ 293:865-881 (1999) (Attachment F)

WO 98/45331 (Figures 1A, 1B, 10A, 10B, provided as Attachment G) also provides sequence data for the heavy and light chain variable domains of Y0317, together with the heavy and light chain variable domains of murine A.4.6.1, the heavy and light chain variable domains of humanized variant Fab-12, and the Kabat human consensus framework, humIII. WO 98/45331 confirms that, in addition to non-human CDRs derived from the sequence of the murine antibody, ranibizumab comprises framework substitutions in the variable domains at positions 4 and 46 in the light chain (V_L) and positions 49, 69, 71, 73, 76, 78, and 94 in the heavy chain (V_H).²

(2) Explanation Regarding Claim 29 of the '213 Patent Relative to Ranibizumab

As explained below, the active pharmaceutical ingredient of the approved product, ranibizumab, is a humanized Fab fragment that is covered by at least claim 29.

Claim 29 of the '213 patent reads as follows:

29. An antibody comprising the humanized variable domain of claim 1.

Claim 29 depends from claim 1, which reads as follows:

 A humanized antibody variable domain comprising non-human Complementarity Determining Region (CDR) amino acid residues which bind an antigen incorporated into a human antibody variable domain, and further comprising a Framework Region (FR) amino acid substitution at a site selected from the group consisting of: 4L, 38L, 43L, 44L, 58L, 62L, 65L, 66L, 67L, 68L, 69L, 73L, 85L, 98L, 2H, 4H, 36H, 39H, 43H, 45H, 69H, 70H, 74H, and 92H, utilizing the numbering system set forth in Kabat.

The term "antibody," as defined in the '213 patent specification includes, in addition to full-length antibodies, antibody fragments such as Fab, Fab', $F(ab)_2$ and Fv so long as those fragments retain the desired biological activity, *i.e.*, binding to VEGF (*See, e.g.*, '213 at col. 8, lines 11-17; col. 24, lines 13-18). As recited in the '213 specification – "FAb fragments with specificity for the antigen are specifically encompassed within the term 'antibody' as it is defined, discussed, and claimed herein." '213 at col. 24, lines 13-18. Ranibizumab, being

² Compare sequence data for the heavy and light chain variable domains of Y0317 (Figs. 10A-10B), A.4.6.1 (Figs. 1A-1B) and humIII (Figs. 1A-1B) as set forth in WO 98/45331, provided as Attachment G.

a Fab fragment that binds VEGF, falls within the scope of the term "antibody" as used in Claims 1 and 29.

The amino acid sequences of the V_L and V_H domains of ranibizumab include human framework substitutions at positions 4L, 46L, 49H, 69H, 71H, 73H, 76H, 78H and 94H.³ Of these, substitutions at positions 4L and 69H are among those recited in the Markush group of claim 1. Figures 1A-1B of WO 98/45331, provided as Attachment G, show the heavy and light chain variable domains of sequences of the same import antibody ("A4.6.1") used to design ranibizumab on the lines above the variable domains of the Fab-12 sequence and the Kabat consensus sequences ("humIII").⁴ The A4.6.1 antibody is a murine monoclonal antibody; its sequence is therefore "non-human." See, e.g., Chen et al. Figures 10A-10B of WO 98/45331, provided as Attachment G (and Figure 1 of Chen et al.), show the variable domains of the Y0317 sequence. When the heavy and light chain variable domains of A4.6.1, Y0317 and humIII are aligned, the framework substitutions noted above are apparent utilizing the Kabat numbering system.

In each of the V_L and V_H domains of ranibizumab, "substantially less than an intact human variable domain has been substituted by the corresponding sequence from a non-human species" (*i.e.*, the murine antibody A4.6.1). See, e.g., '213 at col. 2, lines 27-31. Ranibizumab is therefore "humanized" within the meaning of claims 1 and 29 of the '213 patent.

As also required in claim 1, ranibizumab includes non-human amino acid residues in its CDRs. The CDRs in ranibizumab are also functional to "bind an antigen" – here, the VEGF protein. See LUCENTIS[™] label, provided as Attachment A.

Ranibizumab thus meets the limitations of dependent claim 29.

See WO 98/45331 at Figures 1A-1B (humIII) and 10A-10B (Y0317).

The residues in a human Ig sequence that are substituted with residues from an "import antibody" are identified according to standard numbering conventions published by Kabat. See '213 at col. 10, line 45 through col. 11, line 26. The Kabat sequences represent consensus amino acid sequences for various human antibodies in each subclass. See id.

Relevant Dates Under 35 U.S.C. § 156 for Determination of Applicable Regulatory Review Period [§ 1.740(a)(10)]

(a) Patent Issue Date

U.S. Patent No. 6,407,213 was issued on June 18, 2002.

(b) IND Effective Date [35 U.S.C. § 156(g)(1)(B)(i); 37 C.F.R. § 1.740(a)(10)(i)(A)]

The date that an exemption under § 505(i) of the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act became effective (*i.e.*, the date that an investigational new drug application ("IND") became effective) for LUCENTIS ™ (referred to as "Humanized Monoclonal Antibody Fragment (rhuFab V2)(E. coli, Genentech) to Vascular Endothelial Growth Factor (VEGF), Intravitreal) was October 7, 1999. The IND was assigned number BB-IND # 8633. A copy of the letter from the FDA reflecting the effective date of the IND is provided in Attachment H. The application date for this IND was October 6, 1999.

(c) BLA Submission Date [35 U.S.C. § 156(g)(1)(B)(i); 37 C.F.R. § 1.740(a)(10)(i)(B)]

The BLA was submitted by Genentech to the FDA on December 29, 2005. The BLA was assigned number BL# 125156/0. A copy of the letter from the FDA acknowledging receipt of the BLA and reflecting the BLA submission date is provided in Attachment I.

(d) BLA Issue Date [35 U.S.C. § 156(g)(1)(B)(ii); 37 C.F.R. § 1.740(a)(10)(i)(C)]

The FDA approved biologic license application 125156/0 authorizing the marketing of LUCENTIS [™] on June 30, 2006. LUCENTIS [™] was approved under Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS) U.S. License No. 1048. A copy of the approval letter from the FDA is provided as Attachment B.

U.S. Patent No. 6,407,213 Carter, et al. Application Under 35 U.S.C. § 156

Pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 1.740(a)(11), the following provides a brief description of the activities of Genentech, Inc. before the FDA in relation to the regulatory review of LUCENTIS[™]. The brief description lists the significant events that occurred during the regulatory review period for the approved product. In several instances, communications to or from the FDA are referenced. Pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 1.740(a)(11), 21 C.F.R. § 60.20(a), and M.P.E.P. § 2753, copies of all such communications are not provided in this application, but can be obtained from records maintained by the FDA.

On October 6, 1999, Genentech submitted to FDA (See Attachment H) an investigational new drug application for a recombinant humanized monoclonal antibody fragment (rhuFab V2, now known as Ranibizumab) against Vascular Endothelial Growth Factor (VEGF). The antibody was developed as a potential new therapeutic in treating patients with the exudative (wet or neovascular) form of age-related macular degeneration (AMD).

On October 7, 1999 FDA made BB-IND #8633 effective via a communication mailed to Genentech on October 13, 1999 (*See* Attachment H). According to the FDA, initiation of trials could begin 30 days after October 7, 1999.

The first human clinical trial (Phase I) was initiated on February 8, 2000 followed by Phase II human trials and Phase III human trials, some of which remain ongoing at the time of this application.

On February 5, 2002, representatives of Genentech and the FDA (CBER and CDER) participated in a Type C meeting to discuss the proposed clinical development plan for ranibizumab in AMD.

On October 31, 2002 representatives of Genentech and FDA (CBER and CDER) participated in an Type B End-of-Phase II meeting.

Beginning in approximately March 2003, and continuing at the time of this application, Phase III studies have been conducted. The three Phase III trials forming the basis of the Biologics License Application (BLA), FVF2598g, FVF2587g, and FVF3192g are studies of two year duration with primary endpoints of one year. FVF2587g and FVF3192g, along with extension study FVF3426g and safety study FVF3689g, remain ongoing at the time of this application.

On September 21, 2005 representatives of Genentech and CDER participated in a Type B Pre-BLA submission meeting to discuss information requirements for the BLA.

- Genentech submitted a BLA for ranibizumab for the treatment of patients with wet AMD on December 29, 2005 (See Attachment I).
- FDA acknowledged receipt of the BLA for ranibizumab via a communication mailed to Genentech dated January 27, 2006. The letter indicated that FDA had assigned the Submission Tracking Number (STN) of BL #125156/0 to the BLA (See Attachment I).
 - By way of a communication mailed to Genentech on March 14, 2006 FDA made Genentech aware that the BLA for ranibizumab was filed on February 28, 2006 and that FDA had assigned a user fee goal date of June 30, 2006 (See Attachment J).

On June 30, 2006 FDA approved BLA 125156/0, issuing marketing authorization for LUCENTIS[™] (See Attachment B).

12.

1

Statement Concerning Eligibility for and Duration of Extension Sought Under 35 U.S.C. § 156 [37 C.F.R. § 1.740(a)(12)]

- (a) In the opinion of the Applicant, U.S. Patent No. 6,407,213 is eligible for an extension under § 156 because:
 - (i) one or more claims of the '213 patent claim the approved product or a method of making or using the approved product;
 - the term of the '213 patent has not been previously extended on the basis of § 156;
 - (iii) the '213 patent has not expired;
 - (iv) no other patent has been extended pursuant to § 156 on the basis of the regulatory review process associated with the approved product, LUCENTIS[™];
 - (v) there is an eligible period of regulatory review by which the patent may be extended pursuant to § 156;
 - (vi) the applicant for marketing approval exercised due diligence within the meaning of § 156(d)(3) during the period of regulatory review;
 - (vii) the present application has been submitted within the 60-day period following the approval date of the approved product, pursuant to § 156(c); and
 - (viii) this application otherwise complies with all requirements of 35 U.S.C. § 156 and applicable rules and procedures.
- (b) The period by which the term of the '213 patent is requested by Applicant to be extended is 378 days.
- (c) The requested period of extension of term for the '213 patent corresponds to the regulatory review period that is eligible for extension pursuant to § 156, based on the facts and circumstances of the regulatory review associated with the approved product LUCENTIS[™] and the issuance of the '213 patent. The period was determined as follows.
 - (i) The relevant dates for calculating the regulatory review period, based on the events discussed in the section above, are the following.

U.S. Patent No. 6,407,213 Carter, et al. Application Under 35 U.S.C. § 156

Exemption under FDCA § 505(i) became effective	October 7, 1999	
Patent was granted	June 18, 2002	
Biologics License Application (BLA) under PHSA § 351 was filed	December 29, 2005	
BLA was approved	June 30, 2006	

- (ii) The '213 patent was granted during the period specified in § 156(g)(1)(B)(i) (*i.e.*, the period from the date of the grant of the exemption under § 505(i) of the FDCA until the date of submission of the BLA). Pursuant to § 156(b) and (c)(2), the calculated regulatory review period therefore includes a component of time between when the patent was granted and when the BLA was submitted (1/2 of 1289 days or 644 days).
- (iii) The patent was granted prior to the start of the period specified in § 156(g)(1)(B)(ii) (*i.e.*, the period from the date of submission of the BLA until the date of approval). The regulatory review period under § 156(b) therefore includes a component equal to the total number of days in that period that are after the BLA was submitted (184 days).
- (iv) The period determined according to § 156(b), (c)(2), and (g)(1) for the approved product (*i.e.*, the number of days following the date of issue of the patent between the dates of submission and of approval of the BLA for LUCENTIS[™]) is 828 days.
- (v) The '213 patent will expire on June 18, 2019.
- (vi) The date of approval of the approved product is June 30, 2006.
- (vii) The date that is fourteen years from the date of approval of the approved product is June 30, 2020.
- (viii) The period measured from the date the patent expires (*i.e.*, June 18, 2019) until the end of the fourteen-year period specified in §156 (c)(3) (*i.e.*, June 30, 2020) is approximately 1 year and 13 days or 378 days.
- (ix) The number of days in the regulatory review period determined pursuant to § 156(g)(1)(B)(ii) (i.e., 828 days) exceeds the number of days that the

patent may be extended pursuant to \$156(c)(3). As such, the period by which the patent may be extended is limited by the fourteen-year rule of \$156(c)(3) to 378 days.

(x) The '213 patent issued after the effective date of Public Law No. 98-417. As such, the two- or three-year limit of 35 U.S.C. § 156(g)(6)(C) does not apply.

13. Statement Pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 1.740(a)(13)

Pursuant to 37 C.F.R. § 1.740(a)(13), Applicant acknowledges its duty to disclose to the Director of the PTO and to the Secretary of Health and Human Services any information which is material to the determination of entitlement to the extension sought, particularly as that duty is defined in 37 C.F.R. § 1.765.

14. Applicable Fee [§ 1.740(a)(14)]

Our check in payment of the fee prescribed in 37 C.F.R. § 1.20(j) for a patent term extension application under 35 U.S.C. § 156 accompanies this application. Please deduct any additional required fees from, or credit any overpayments to our deposit account no. 18-1260.

15. Name and Address for Correspondence [§ 1.740(a)(14)]

Please direct all inquiries, questions, and communications regarding this application for term extension to:

Jeffrey P. Kushan SIDLEY AUSTIN LLP 1501 K Street, N.W. Washington, D.C. 20005 Phone: 202-736-8914 Fax: 202-736-8111 email: jkushan@sidley.com

The correspondence address for U.S. Patent No. 6,407,213 is unchanged for all other purposes. A Power of Attorney granted to the undersigned by the patent assignee, a copy of which is included with this application as Attachment K, accompanies this communication.

U.S. Patent No. 6,407,213 Carter, et al. Application Under 35 U.S.C. § 156

Two additional copies of this application are enclosed, in compliance with 37 C.F.R. § 1.740(b). Applicant also provides herewith two further copies of the application for the convenience of the Office, pursuant to M.P.E.P. § 2763.

Sincerely,

Jeffrey P. Kushan Attorney for Applicant Registration No. 43,401

Sidley Austin LLP 1501 K Street, N.W. Washington, D.C. 20005

Dated: August 25, 2006

INDEX OF ATTACHMENTS

Attachment A:	Lucentis [™] Product Label
Attachment B:	Lucentis [™] Biologics' License Application Approval
Attachment C:	U.S. Patent No. 6,407,213
Attachment D:	Certificate of Correction of U.S. Patent No. 6,407,213
Attachment E:	Receipt of Maintenance Fee Payment for U.S. Patent No. 6,407,213
Attachment F:	Chen et al., "Selection and Analysis of an Optimized Anti-VEGF Antibody: Crystal Structure of an Affinity-Matured Fab in Complex with Antigen." J. Mol. Bio., 293:865-881 (1999).
Attachment G:	Figures 1A, 1B, 10A and 10B of WO 98/45331
Attachment H:	10/13/99 Letter from FDA to Genentech regarding IND acceptance/effective date
Attachment I:	01/27/06 Letter from the FDA to Genentech regarding receipt and acceptance of BLA Application
Attachment J:	03/14/06 Letter from the FDA to Genentech regarding 02/28/06 filing of BLA, and 06/30/06 assignation of User Fee Goal Date
Attachment K:	Power of Attorney by Assignee

٠

HIGHLIGHTS OF PRESCRIBING INFORMATION These highlights do not include all the information needed to use LUCENTIS safely and effectively. See full prescribing information for LUCENTIS.

LUCENTISTM (ranibizumab injection)

Initial U.S. Approval: 2006

-----INDICATIONS AND USAGE-----

LUCENTIS is indicated for the treatment of patients with neovascular (wet) age-related macular degeneration (1).

-----DOSAGE AND ADMINISTRATION-----

- FOR OPHTHALMIC INTRAVITREAL INJECTION ONLY (2.1)
- LUCENTIS 0.5 mg (0.05 mL) is recommended to be administered by intravitreal injection once a month (2.2).
- Although less effective, treatment may be reduced to one injection every three months after the first four injections if monthly injections are not feasible. Compared to continued monthly dosing, dosing every 3 months will lead to an approximate 5-letter (1-line) loss of visual acuity benefit, on average, over the following 9 months. Patients should be evaluated regularly (2.2).

.....DOSAGE FORMS AND STRENGTHS------

10 mg/mL single-use vial (3)

-----CONTRAINDICATIONS------

- Ocular or periocular infections (4.1)
- Hypersensitivity (4.2)

WARNINGS AND PRECAUTIONS

- Endophthalmitis and retinal detachments may occur following intravitreal injections. Patients should be monitored during the week following the injection (51).
- Increases in intraocular pressure have been noted within 60 minutes of intravitreal injection (5.2).

ADVERSE REACTIONS-The most common adverse reactions (reported ≥ 6% higher in LUCENTIS-treated subjects than control subjects) are conjunctival hemorrhage, eye pain, vitreous floaters, increased intraocular pressure, and intraocular inflammation (6.2).

To report SUSPECTED ADVERSE REACTIONS, contact Genentech at 1-888-835-2555 or FDA at 1-800-FDA-1088 or www.fda.gov/medwatch.

See Section 17 for PATIENT COUNSELING INFORMATION.

FULL PRESCRIBING INFORMATION: CONTENTS*

- 1 INDICATIONS AND USAGE
- 2 DOSAGE AND ADMINISTRATION
 - 2.1 General Dosing Information
 - 2.2 Dosing

3

- 2.3 Preparation for Administration
- 2.4 Administration
- 2.5 Stability and Storage
- DOSAGE FORMS AND STRENGTHS
- 4 CONTRAINDICATIONS
 - 4.1 Ocular or Periocular Infections
 - 4.2 Hypersensitivity
- 5 WARNINGS AND PRECAUTIONS
 - 5.1 Endophthalmitis and Retinal Detachments
 - 5.2 Increases in Intraocular Pressure
 - 5.3 Thromboembolic Events

6 ADVERSE REACTIONS

- 6.1 Injection Procedure
- 6.2 Clinical Studies Experience Ocular Events
- 6.3 Clinical Studies Experience Non-Ocular Events
- 6.4 Immunogenicity
- 7 DRUG INTERACTIONS
- 8 USE IN SPECIFIC POPULATIONS
- U.S. BLA (BL125156) Ranibizumab injection

- 8.1 Pregnancy
- 8.3 Nursing Mothers
- 8.4 Pediatric Use
- 8.5 Geriatric Use
- 8.6 Patients with Renal Impairment
- 8.7 Patients with Hepatic Dysfunction
- 10 OVERDOSAGE
- 11 DESCRIPTION
- 12 CLINICAL PHARMACOLOGY
 - 12.1 Mechanism of Action
 - 12.2 Pharmacodynamics
 - 12.3 Pharmacokinetics
- 13 NONCLINICAL TOXICOLOGY 13.1 Carcinogenesis, Mutagenesis,
- Impairment of Fertility 14 CLINICAL STUDIES
 - 14.1 Study 1 and Study 2
 - 14.2 Study 3
- 16 HOW SUPPLIED/STORAGE AND HANDLING
- 17 PATIENT COUNSELING INFORMATION
- Sections or subsections omitted from the Full Prescribing Information are not listed.

Genentech, Inc.

FULL PRESCRIBING INFORMATION

I INDICATIONS AND USAGE

LUCENTIS is indicated for the treatment of patients with neovascular (wet) age-related macular degeneration.

2 DOSAGE AND ADMINISTRATION

2.1 General Dosing Information FOR OPHTHALMIC INTRAVITREAL INJECTION ONLY.

2.2 Dosing

LUCENTIS 0.5 mg (0.05 mL) is recommended to be administered by intravitreal injection once a month.

Although less effective, treatment may be reduced to one injection every three months after the first four injections if monthly injections are not feasible. Compared to continued monthly dosing, dosing every 3 months will lead to an approximate 5-letter (1-line) loss of visual acuity benefit, on average, over the following 9 months. Patients should be evaluated regularly [see Clinical Studies (14.2)].

2.3 Preparation for Administration

Using aseptic technique, all (0.2 mL) of the LUCENTIS vial contents are withdrawn through a 5-micron 19-gauge filter needle attached to a 1-cc tuberculin syringe. The filter needle should be discarded after withdrawal of the vial contents and should not be used for intravitreal injection. The filter needle should be replaced with a sterile 30-gauge $\times 1/2$ -inch needle for the intravitreal injection. The contents should be expelled until the plunger tip is aligned with the line that marks 0.05 mL on the syringe.

2.4 Administration

The intravitreal injection procedure should be carried out under controlled aseptic conditions, which include the use of sterile gloves, a sterile drape, and a sterile eyelid speculum (or equivalent). Adequate anesthesia and a broad-spectrum microbicide should be given prior to the injection.

Following the intravitreal injection, patients should be monitored for elevation in intraocular pressure and for endophthalmitis. Monitoring may consist of a check for perfusion of the optic nerve head immediately after the injection, tonometry within 30 minutes following the injection, and biomicroscopy between two and seven days following the injection. Patients should be instructed to report any symptoms suggestive of endophthalmitis without delay.

Each vial should only be used for the treatment of a single eye. If the contralateral eye requires treatment, a new vial should be used and the sterile field, syringe, gloves, drapes, eyelid speculum, filter, and injection needles should be changed before LUCENTIS is administered to the other eye.

No special dosage modification is required for any of the populations that have been studied (e.g., gender, elderly).

U.S. BLA (BL125156) Ranibizumab injection

2.5 Stability and Storage

LUCENTIS should be refrigerated at 2°-8°C (36°-46°F). DO NOT FREEZE. Do not use beyond the date stamped on the label. LUCENTIS vials should be protected from light. Store in the original carton until time of use.

DOSAGE FORMS AND STRENGTHS

Single-use glass vial designed to deliver 0.05 mL of 10 mg/mL.

4 CONTRAINDICATIONS

4.1 Ocular or Periocular Infections

LUCENTIS is contraindicated in patients with ocular or periocular infections.

4.2 Hypersensitivity

LUCENTIS is contraindicated in patients with known hypersensitivity to ranibizumab or any of the excipients in LUCENTIS.

5 WARNINGS AND PRECAUTIONS

5.1 Endophthalmitis and Retinal Detachments

Intravitreal injections, including those with LUCENTIS, have been associated with endophthalmitis and retinal detachments. Proper aseptic injection technique should always be used when administering LUCENTIS. In addition, patients should be monitored during the week following the injection to permit early treatment should an infection occur [see Dosage and Administration (2.3, 2.4) and Patient Counseling Information (17)].

5.2 Increases in Intraocular Pressure

Increases in intraocular pressure have been noted within 60 minutes of intravitreal injection with LUCENTIS. Therefore, intraocular pressure as well as the perfusion of the optic nerve head should be monitored and managed appropriately [see Dosage and Administration (2.4)].

5.3 Thromboembolic Events

Although there was a low rate (<4%) of arterial thromboembolic events observed in the LUCENTIS clinical trials, there is a theoretical risk of arterial thromboembolic events following intravitreal use of inhibitors of VEGF [see Adverse Reactions (6,3)].

6 ADVERSE REACTIONS

6.1 Injection Procedure

Serious adverse events related to the injection procedure have occurred in <0.1% of intravitreal injections, including endophthalmitis [see Warnings and Precautions (5.1)], rhegmatogenous retinal detachments, and iatrogenic traumatic cataracts.

6.2 Clinical Trials Experience – Ocular Events Other serious ocular adverse events observed among LUCENTIS-treated patients occurring in <2% of patients

Genentech, Inc.

included intraocular inflammation and increased intraocular pressure [see Warnings and Precoutions (5.1, 5.2)].

The available safety data include exposure to LUCENTIS in 874 patients with neovascular age-related macular degeneration in three double-masked, controlled studies with dosage regimens of 0.3 mg (375 patients) or 0.5 mg (379 patients) administered monthly by intravitreal injection (Studies 1 and 2) [see Clinical Studies (14.1)] and dosage regimens of 0.3 mg (59 patients) or 0.5 mg (61 patients) administered once a month for 3 consecutive doses followed by a dose administered once every 3 months (Study 3) [see Clinical Studies (14.2)].

Because clinical trials are conducted under widely varying conditions, adverse reaction rates observed in one clinical trial of a drug cannot be directly compared with rates in the clinical trials of the same or another drug and may not reflect the rates observed in practice.

Table 1 shows the most frequently reported ocular adverse events that were reported with LUCENTIS treatment. The ranges represent the maximum and minimum rates across all three studies for control, and across all three studies and both dose groups for LUCENTIS.

Ta	ble 1	
Adverse Event	LUCENTIS	Control
Conjunctival hemorrhage	77%-43%	66%-29%
Eye pain	37%-17%	33%-11%
Vitreous floaters	32%-3%	10%-3%
Retinal hemorrhage	26%-15%	56%-37%
Intraocular pressure increased	24%-8%	7%-3%
Vitreous detachment	22%-7%	18%-13%
Intraocular inflammation	18%-5%	11%-3%
Eye irritation	19%-4%	20%-6%
Cataract	16%-5%	16%-6%
Foreign body sensation in eyes	19%-6%	14%-6%
Lacrimation increased	17%-3%	16%-0%
Eye pruritis	13%-0%	12%-3%
Visual disturbance	14%-0%	9%-2%
Blepharitis	13%-3%	9%-4%
Subretinal fibrosis	13%-0%	19%-10%
Ocular hyperemia	10%-5%	10%-1%
Maculopathy	10%-3%	11%-3%
Visual acuity blurred/decreased	17%-4%	24%-10%
Detachment of the retinal pigment epithelium	11%-1%	15%-3%
Dry eye	10%-3%	8%-5%
Ocular discomfort	8%-0%	5%-0%
Conjunctival hyperemia	9%-0%	7%-0%
Posterior capsule opacification	8%-0%	5%-0%
Retinal exudates	9%-1%	11%-3%

6.3 Clinical Trials Experience – Non-Ocular Events Table 2 shows the most frequently reported non-ocular adverse events with LUCENTIS treatment. The ranges represent the maximum and minimum rates across all three studies for control, and across all three studies and both dose groups for LUCENTIS.

	Table 2	
Adverse Event	LUCENTIS	Control
Hypertension/elevated blood pressure	23%-5%	23%-8%
Nasopharyngitis	16%-5%	13%-5%
Anthralgia	11%-3%	9%-0%
Headache	15%-2%	10%-3%
Bronchitis	10%-3%	8%-2%
Cough	10%-3%	7%-2%
Anemia	8%-3%	8%-0%
Nausea	9%-2%	6%-4%
Sinusitis	8%-2%	6%-4%
Upper respiratory tract infection	15%-2%	10%-4%
Back pain	10%-1%	9%-0%
Urinary tract infection	9%-4%	8%-5%
Influenza	10%-2%	5%-1%
Arthritis	8%-0%	8%-2% -
Dizziness	8%-2%	10%-2%
Constipation	7%-3%	8%-2%

The rate of arterial thromboembolic events in the three studies in the first year was 2.1% of patients (18 out of 874) in the combined group of patients treated with 0.3 mg or 0.5 mg LUCENTIS compared with 1.1% of patients (5 out of 441) in the control arms of the studies. In the second year of Study 1. the rate of arterial thromboembolic events was 3.0% of patients (14 out of 466) in the combined group of patients treated with 0.3 mg or 0.5 mg LUCENTIS compared with 3.2% of patients (7 out of 216) in the control arm [see Warnings and Precautions (5.3)].

6.4 Immunogenicity

The pre-treatment incidence of immunoreactivity to LUCENTIS was 0%-3% across treatment groups. After monthly dosing with LUCENTIS for 12 to 24 months, low titers of antibodies to LUCENTIS were detected in approximately 1%-6% of patients. The immunogenicity data reflect the percentage of patients whose test results were considered positive for antibodies to LUCENTIS in an electrochemiluminescence assay and are highly dependent on the sensitivity and specificity of the assay. The clinical significance of immunoreactivity to LUCENTIS is unclear at this time, although some patients with the highest levels of immunoreactivity were noted to have iritis or vitritis.

DRUG INTERACTIONS

Drug interaction studies have not been conducted with LUCENTIS.

U.S. BLA (BL125156) Ranibizumab injection

LUCENTIS intravitreal injection has been used adjunctively with verteporfin photodynamic therapy (PDT). Twelve of 105 (11%) patients developed serious intraocular inflammation; in 10 of the 12 patients, this occurred when LUCENTIS was administered 7 days (\pm 2 days) after verteporfin PDT.

8 USE IN SPECIFIC POPULATIONS

8.1 Pregnancy

Pregnancy Category C. Animal reproduction studies have not been conducted with ranibizumab. It is also not known whether ranibizumab can cause fetal harm when administered to a pregnant woman or can affect reproduction capacity. LUCENTIS should be given to a pregnant woman only if clearly needed.

8.3 Nursing Mothers

It is not known whether ranibizumab is excreted in human milk. Because many drugs are excreted in human milk, and because the potential for absorption and harm to infant growth and development exists, caution should be exercised when LUCENTIS is administered to a nursing woman.

8.4 Pediatric Use

The safety and effectiveness of LUCENTIS in pediatric patients has not been established.

8.5 Geriatric Use

In the controlled clinical studies, approximately 94% (822/879) of the patients randomized to treatment with LUCENTIS were \geq 65 years of age and approximately 68% (601/879) were \geq 75 years of age. No notable difference in treatment effect was seen with increasing age in any of the studies. Age did not have a significant effect on systemic exposure in a population pharmacokinetic analysis after correcting for creatinine clearance.

8.6 Patients with Renal Impairment

No formal studies have been conducted to examine the pharmacokinetics of ranibizumab in patients with renal impairment. Sixty-eight percent of patients (136 of 200) in the population pharmacokinetic analysis had renal impairment (46.5% mild, 20% moderate, and 1.5% severe). Reduction in ranibizumab clearance is minimal in patients with renal impairment and is considered clinically insignificant. Dose adjustment is not expected to be needed for patients with renal impairment.

8.7 Patients with Hepatic Dysfunction

No formal studies have been conducted to examine the pharmacokinetics of ranibizumab in patients with hepatic impairment. Dose adjustment is not expected to be needed for patients with hepatic dysfunction.

10 OVERDOSAGE

Planned initial single doses of ranibizumab injection 1.0 mg were associated with clinically significant intraocular inflammation in 2 of 2 patients injected. With an escalating regimen of doses beginning with initial doses of ranibizumab

U.S. BLA (BL125156) Ranibizumab injection

injection 0.3 mg, doses as high as 2.0 mg were tolerated in 15 of 20 patients.

11 DESCRIPTION

LUCENTISTM (ranibizumab injection) is a recombinant humanized IgG1 kappa isotype monoclonal antibody fragment designed for intraocular use. Ranibizumab binds to and inhibits the biologic activity of human vascular endothelial growth factor A (VEGF-A). Ranibizumab has a molecular weight of approximately 48 kilodaltons and is produced by an *E. coli* expression system in a nutrient medium containing the antibiotic tetracycline. Tetracycline is not detectable in the final product.

LUCENTIS is a sterile, colorless to pale yellow solution in a single-use glass vial. LUCENTIS is supplied as a preservative-free, sterile solution in a single-use glass vial designed to deliver 0.05 mL of 10 mg/mL LUCENTIS aqueous solution with 10 mM histidine HCl, 10% a, a-trehalose dihydrate, 0.01% polysorbate 20, pH 5.5.

12 CLINICAL PHARMACOLOGY

12.1 Mechanism of Action

Ranibizumab binds to the receptor binding site of active forms of VEGF-A, including the biologically active, cleaved form of this molecule, VEGF₁₁₀. VEGF-A has been shown to cause neovascularization and leakage in models of ocular angiogenesis and is thought to contribute to the progression of the neovascular form of age-related macular degeneration (AMD). The binding of ranibizumab to VEGF-A prevents the interaction of VEGF-A with its receptors (VEGFR1 and VEGFR2) on the surface of endothelial cells, reducing endothelial cell proliferation, vascular leakage, and new blood vessel formation.

12.2 Pharmacodynamics

Neovascular AMD is associated with foveal retinal thickening as assessed by optical coherence tomography (OCT) and leakage from CNV as assessed by fluorescein angiography.

In Study 3, foveal retinal thickness was assessed by OCT in 118/184 patients. OCT measurements were collected at baseline, Months 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, and 12. In patients treated with LUCENTIS, foveal retinal thickness decreased, on average, more than the sham group from baseline through Month 12. Retinal thickness decreased by Month 1 and decreased further at Month 3, on average. Foveal retinal thickness data did not provide information useful in influencing treatment decisions [see Clinical Studies (14,2)].

In patients treated with LUCENTIS, the area of vascular leakage, on average, decreased by Month 3 as assessed by fluorescein angiography. The area of vascular leakage for an individual patient was not correlated with visual acuity.

12.3 Pharmacokinetics

In animal studies, following intravitreal injection, ranibizumab was cleared from the vitreous with a half-life of approximately 3 days. After reaching a maximum at approximately 1 day,

the serum concentration of ranibizumab declined in parallel with the vitreous concentration. In these animal studies, systemic exposure of ranibizumab is more than 2000-fold lower than in the vitreous.

In patients with neovascular AMD, following monthly intravitreal administration, maximum ranibizumab serum concentrations were low (0.3 ng/mL to 2.36 ng/mL). These levels were below the concentration of ranibizumab (11 ng/mL to 27 ng/mL) thought to be necessary to inhibit the biological activity of VEGF-A by 50%, as measured in an in vitro cellular proliferation assay. The maximum observed serum concentration was dose proportional over the dose range of 0.05 to 1.0 mg/eye. Based on a population pharmacokinetic analysis, maximum serum concentrations of 1.5 ng/mL are predicted to be reached at approximately I day after monthly intravitreal administration of LUCENTIS 0.5 mg/eye. Based on the disappearance of ranibizumab from serum, the estimated average vitreous elimination half-life was approximately 9 days. Steady-state minimum concentration is predicted to be 0.22 ng/mL with a monthly dosing regimen. In humans, serum ranibizumab concentrations are predicted to be approximately 90,000-fold lower than vitreal concentrations.

13 NONCLINICAL TOXICOLOGY

13.1 Carcinogenesis, Mutagenesis, Impairment of Fertility

No carcinogenicity or mutagenicity data are available for ranibizumab injection in animals or humans.

No studies on the effects of ranibizumab on fertility have been conducted.

14 CLINICAL STUDIES

The safety and efficacy of LUCENTIS were assessed in three randomized, double-masked, sham- or active-controlled studies in patients with neovascular AMD. A total of 1323 patients (LUCENTIS 879, Control 444) were enrolled in the three studies.

14.1 Study 1 and Study 2

In Study 1, patients with minimally classic or occult (without classic) CNV lesions received monthly LUCENTIS 0.3 mg or 0.5 mg intravitreal injections or monthly sham injections. Data are available through Month 24. Patients treated with LUCENTIS in Study 1 received a mean of 22 total treatments out of a possible 24 from Day 0 to Month 24.

In Study 2, patients with predominantly classic CNV lesions received one of the following: 1) monthly LUCENTIS 0.3 mg intravitreal injections and sham PDT; 2) monthly LUCENTIS 0.5 mg intravitreal injections and sham PDT; or 3) sham intravitreal injections and active verteporfin PDT. Sham PDT (or active verteporfin PDT) was given with the initial LUCENTIS (or sham) intravitreal injection and every 3 months thereafter if fluorescein angiography showed persistence or recurrence of leakage. Data are available through Month 12. Patients treated with LUCENTIS in

U.S. BLA (BL125156) Ranibizumab injection

Study 2 received a mean of 12 total treatments out of a possible 13 from Day 0 through Month 12.

In both studies, the primary efficacy endpoint was the proportion of patients who maintained vision, defined as losing fewer than 15 letters of visual acuity at 12 months compared with baseline. Almost all LUCENTIS-treated patients (approximately 95%) maintained their visual acuity. 34%-40% of LUCENTIS-treated patients experienced a clinically significant improvement in vision, defined as gaining 15 or more letters at 12 months. The size of the lesion did not significantly affect the results. Detailed results are shown in the tables below.

	Table 3	
Jutcomes at Month	12 and Month 24 in Study 1	

Outcome Measure	Month	Sham n = 238	LUCENTIS 0.5 mg n = 240	Estimated Difference (95% CI) ^a
Loss of <15	Month 12	62%	95%	32% (26%, 39%)
letters in visual acuity (%) ^b	Month 24	53%	90%	37% (29%, 44%)
Gain of ≥15	Month 12	5%	34%	29% (22%,-35%)
letters in visual acuity (%) ^b	Month 24	4%	33%	29% (23%, 35%)
Mean change in	Month 12	-10.5 (16.6)	+7.2 (14.4)	17.5 (14.8, 20.2)
visual acuity (letters) (SD) ^h	Month 24	-14,9 (18.7)	+6.6 (16.5)	21.1 (18.1, 24.2)

* Adjusted estimate based on the stratified model.

° p<0.01.

0

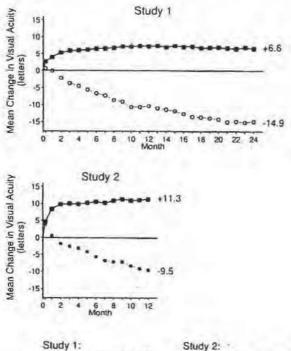
		Table 4				
Outcomes at Month 12 in Study 2						
Outcome Measure	Verteporfin PDT n = 143	LUCENTIS 0.5 mg n = 140	Estimated Difference (95% C1) ⁴			
Loss of < 15 letters in visual acuity (%) ^b	64%	96%.	33% (25%, 41%)			
Gain of ≥ 15 letters in visual acuity (%) ^b	6%	40%	35% (26%, 44%)			
Mean change in visual acuity (letters) (SD) ^b	-9.5 (16.4)	+11.3 (14.6)	21.1 (17.5, 24.6)			

m. . . .

⁴ Adjusted estimate based on the stratified model. ^h p < 0.01.

Figure 1

Mean Change in Visual Acuity from Baseline to Month 24 in Study 1 and to Month 12 in Study 2



Patients in the group treated with LUCENTIS had minimal observable CNV lesion growth, on average. At Month 12, the mean change in the total area of the CNV lesion was 0.1-0.3 DA for LUCENTIS versus 2.3-2.6 DA for the control arms.

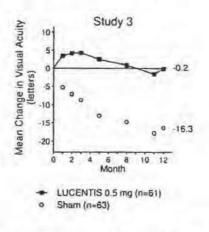
The use of LUCENTIS beyond 24 months has not been studied.

14.2 Study 3

Study 3 was a randomized, double-masked, sham-controlled, two-year study designed to assess the safety and efficacy of LUCENTIS in patients with neovascular AMD (with or without a classic CNV component). Data are available through Month 12. Patients received LUCENTIS 0.3 mg or 0.5 mg intravitreal injections or sham injections once a month for 3 consecutive doses, followed by a dose administered once every 3 months. A total of 184 patients were enrolled in this study (LUCENTIS 0.3 mg, 60; LUCENTIS 0.5 mg, 61; sham, 63); 171 (93%) completed 12 months of this study. Patients treated with LUCENTIS in Study 3 received a mean of 6 total treatments out of possible 6 from Day 0 through Month 12.

In Study 3, the primary efficacy endpoint was mean change in visual acuity at 12 months compared with baseline (see Figure 2). After an initial increase in visual acuity (following monthly dosing), on average, patients dosed once every three months with LUCENTIS lost visual acuity, returning to baseline at Month 12. In Study 3, almost all LUCENTIS-treated patients (90%) maintained their visual acuity at Month 12.

Figure 2 Mean Change in Visual Acuity from Baseline to Month 12 in Study 3



16 HOW SUPPLIED/STORAGE AND HANDLING
 Each LUCENTIS carton, NDC 50242-080-01, contains one
 2-cc glass vial of ranibizumab, one 5-micron.
 19-gauge × 1-1/2-inch filter needle for withdrawal of the vial
 contents, one 30-gauge × 1/2-inch injection needle for the
 intravitreal injection, and one package insert [see Dosage and

U.S. BLA (BL125156) Ranibizumab injection

Administration (2.4)}. VIALS ARE FOR SINGLE EYE USE ONLY.

17 PATIENT COUNSELING INFORMATION

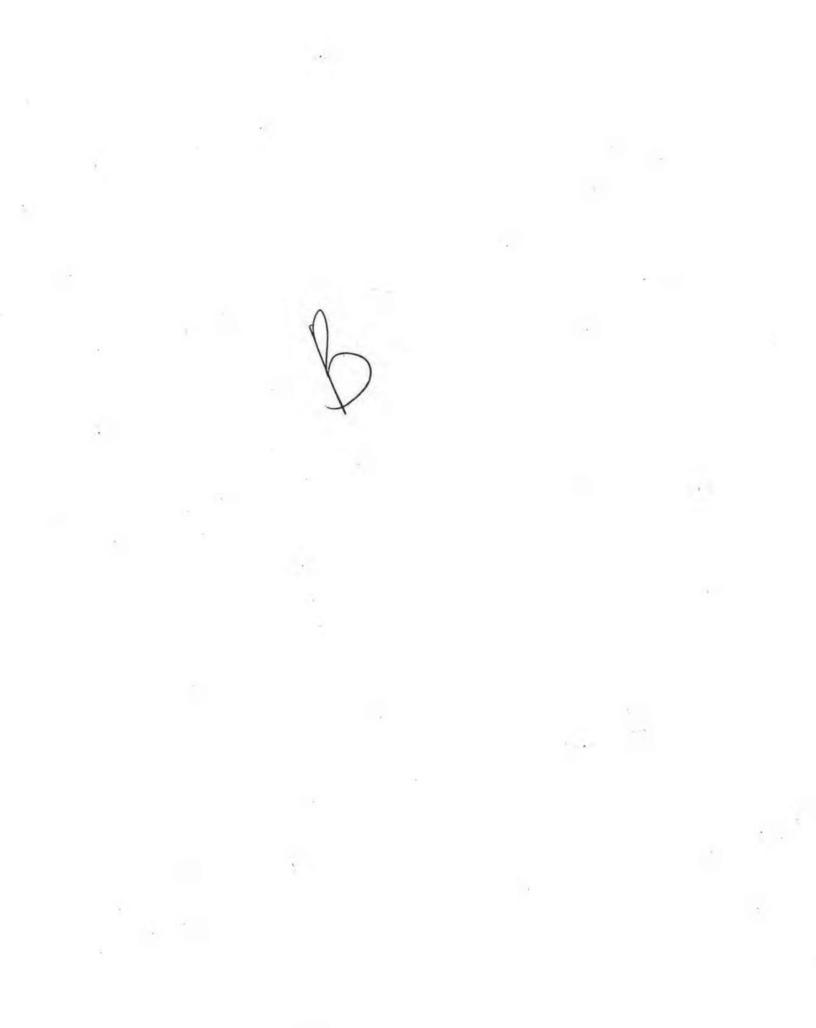
In the days following LUCENTIS administration, patients are at risk of developing endophthalmitis. If the eye becomes red, sensitive to light, painful, or develops a change in vision, the patient should seek immediate care from an ophthalmologist [see Warnings and Precautions (5, 1)].

LUCENTIS TM [ranibizumab injection]	
Manufactured by:	8277700
Genentech, Inc.	LL1404
I DNA Way	4833801
South San Francisco, CA 94080-4990	FDA Approval Date:
	June 2006
	^o 2006 Genentech,
	Inc.

U.S. BLA (BL125156) Ranibizumab injection

Genentech, Inc.

882 of 1033





DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH & HUMAN SERVICES

Public Health Service

Food and Drug Administration Rockville, MD 20852

BLA 125156

Genentech, Inc. Attention: Robert L. Garnick, Ph.D. Senior Vice President, Regulatory Affairs, Quality & Compliance 1 DNA Way South San Francisco, California 94080-4990

Dear Dr. Garnick:

We have approved your biologics' license application for Lucentis (ranibizumab injection) effective this date. You are hereby authorized to introduce or deliver for introduction into interstate commerce, ranibizumab injection under your existing Department of Health and Human Services U.S. License No. 1048. Lucentis (ranibizumab injection) is indicated for the treatment of patients with neovascular (wet) age-related macular degeneration.

Under this license, you are approved to manufacture ranibizumab drug substance at Genentech, Inc., South San Francisco, California; fill the final formulated product at (b) (4). (b) (4). (b) (4). Francisco, California. You may label your product with the proprietary name Lucentis and market it in 10 mg/mL single use glass vials.

We acknowledge receipt of your submissions dated December 29, 2005, and January 31, February 10, 17, 21, and 24, March 17, 23, and 31, April 10, and 28, May 5, 10, 25 (2), 26 (2), and 31, and June 1, 5 (2), 6, 9, 13, 16, 23, 26, 27, 28 (3), and 29, 2006.

The final printed labeling (FPL) must be identical in content to the enclosed labeling text for the package insert, submitted June 28, 2006; the immediate vial container submitted March 31, 2006; and the carton labels submitted June 5, 2006. The statement "No U.S. standard of potency" should be added with the next printing of carton labels. Marketing this product with FPL that is not identical in content to the approved labeling text may render the product misbranded and an unapproved new drug.

The dating period for formulated drug product shall be 18 months from the date of manufacture when stored at 2°-8°C (36°-46°F). The date of manufacture shall be defined as the date of final sterile filtration of the formulated drug product. The dating period for ranibizumab drug substance shall be **parter** when stored at -20 °C.

You currently are not required to submit samples of future lots of Lucentis to the Center for Drug Evaluation and Research (CDER) for release by the Director, CDER, under 21 CFR 610.2. We will continue to monitor compliance with 21 CFR 610.1 requiring completion of tests for conformity with standards applicable to each product prior to release of each lot.

You must submit information to your biologics license application for our review and written approval under 21 CFR 601.12 for any changes in the manufacturing, testing, packaging or labeling of Lucentis, or in the manufacturing facilities.

All applications for new active ingredients, new dosage forms, new indications, new routes of administration, and new dosing regimens are required to contain an assessment of the safety and effectiveness of the product in pediatric patients unless this requirement is waived or deferred. We are waiving the pediatric study requirement for this application.

The following are Postmarketing Studies that are subject to reporting requirements of 21 CFR 601.70:

- 1. Submit the final Clinical Study Report from Study FVF3689g by June 30, 2008.
- Provide safety and efficacy data from a 2-year adequate and well-controlled clinical trial of a mutually acceptable design exploring multiple dosing frequencies of Lucentis.

Date of submission of protocol: November 14, 2008.

Date of start of study: September 21, 2009.

Date of final clinical study report: April 1, 2013.

- 3. To detect and characterize immune responses to ranibizumab:
 - Develop and validate a confirmatory assay capable of detecting both IgG and IgM isotype responses.
 - b. Develop and validate an assay to detect neutralizing anti-ranibizumab antibodies.

The assay methodology and validation reports: September 28, 2007.

4. To characterize further the immune response to ranibizumab, serum samples collected in studies FVF2587g, FVF2598g, FVF3192g will be assayed using the validated methods described above in Postmarketing Commitment #3. The data obtained will be analyzed to discover and evaluate any association between immunoreactivity and dosing frequency as well as any potential impact of immunoreactivity on efficacy or safety outcomes.

The need for an additional clinical study will be determined based on the results from the analysis described above.

Date of submission of protocol and statistical analysis plan: February 28, 2007.

Date of submission of final study report: September 30, 2008.

The following are Postmarketing Studies that are not subject to reporting requirements of 21 CFR 601.70:

 To revise release specifications, shelf-life specifications and in-process limits for ranibizumab drug substance and drug product after ⁽¹⁾/₍₄₎ nmercial manufacturing runs to reflect increased manufacturing experience.

These revisions to the Quality control system, the corresponding data from the (1) commercial manufacturing runs and the analysis plan used to create the revisions will be submitted as a supplement on or before June 30, 2008.

6. To perform additional Lucentis stability studies at 40°C using Ion Exchange Chromatography (IEC) to demonstrate that the corrective actions taken at (^{(b) (4)} --- --- to address the atypical accelerated stability profile observed in the Lucentis 2005 qualification campaign have been sufficient.

Specifically, a one time stability study consisting of $\stackrel{\text{(b)}}{\longrightarrow}$ (4)centis Drug Product launch lots are placed at 40°C and tested by IEC at $\stackrel{\text{(b)}}{\longrightarrow}$ months. These $\stackrel{\text{(b)}}{\longrightarrow}$ Lucentis Drug Product lots are derived from the following:

- (a) (a) of these Lucentis Drug Product lots are manufactured from distinct lots of
- At least $(4)^{(4)}$ these $(4)^{(4)}$ lots are aliquoted and used to manufacture $(4)^{(4)}$ centis drug product lots.

Data will be submitted as a supplement on or before March 31, 2007.

We request that you submit clinical protocols to your IND, with a cross-reference letter to this biologics license application. Submit nonclinical and chemistry, manufacturing, and controls protocols and all study final reports to this application. Please use the following designators to label prominently all submissions, including supplements, relating to these postmarketing study commitments as appropriate:

- Postmarketing Study Protocol
- Postmarketing Study Final Report
- Postmarketing Study Correspondence
- Annual Report on Postmarketing Studies

For each postmarketing study subject to the reporting requirements of 21 CFR 601.70, you must describe the status in an annual report on postmarketing studies for this product. The status report for each study should include:

- information to identify and describe the postmarketing commitment,
- · the original schedule for the commitment,
- the status of the commitment (i.e. pending, ongoing, delayed, terminated, or submitted),

- an explanation of the status including, for clinical studies, the patient accrual rate (i.e. number enrolled to date and the total planned enrollment), and
- a revised schedule if the study schedule has changed and an explanation of the basis for the revision.

As described in 21 CFR 601.70(e), we may publicly disclose information regarding these postmarketing studies on our Web site (<u>http://www.fda.gov/cder/pmc/default.htm</u>). Please refer to the April 2001 Draft Guidance for Industry: Reports on the Status of Postmarketing Studies – Implementation of Section 130 of the Food and Drug Administration Modernization Act of 1997 (see <u>http://www.fda.gov/cber/gdlns/post040401.htm</u>) for further information.

You must submit adverse experience reports under the adverse experience reporting requirements for licensed biological products (21 CFR 600.80). You should submit postmarketing adverse experience reports to the Central Document Room, Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Food and Drug Administration, 5901-B Ammendale Road, Beltsville, MD 20705-1266. Prominently identify all adverse experience reports as described in 21 CFR 600.80.

The MedWatch-to-Manufacturer Program provides manufacturers with copies of serious adverse event reports that are received directly by the FDA. New molecular entities and important new biologics qualify for inclusion for three years after approval. Your firm is eligible to receive copies of reports for this product. To participate in the program, please see the enrollment instructions and program description details at <u>www.fda.gov/medwatch/report/mmp.htm</u>.

You must submit distribution reports under the distribution reporting requirements for licensed biological products (21 CFR 600.81).

You must submit reports of biological product deviations under 21 CFR 600.14. You should promptly identify and investigate all manufacturing deviations, including those associated with processing, testing, packing, labeling, storage, holding and distribution. If the deviation involves a distributed product, may affect the safety, purity, or potency of the product, and meets the other criteria in the regulation, you must submit a report on Form FDA-3486 to the Division of Compliance Risk Management and Surveillance (HFD-330), Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Food and Drug Administration, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857. Biological product deviations sent by courier or overnight mail should be addressed to Food and Drug Administration, CDER, Office of Compliance, Division of Compliance Risk Management and Surveillance, HFD-330, Montrose Metro 2, 11919 Rockville Pike, Rockville, MD 20852.

Please submit all FPL at the time of use and include implementation information on FDA Form 356h. Please provide a PDF-format electronic copy as well as original paper copies (ten for circulars and five for other labels). In addition, you may wish to submit draft copies of the proposed introductory advertising and promotional labeling with a cover letter requesting advisory comments to the Food and Drug Administration, Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Division of Drug Marketing, Advertising and Communication, 5901-B Ammendale Road, Beltsville, MD 20705-1266. Final printed advertising and promotional labeling should be submitted at the time of initial dissemination, accompanied by a FDA Form 2253.

All promotional claims must be consistent with and not contrary to approved labeling. You should not make a comparative promotional claim or claim of superiority over other products unless you have substantial evidence to support that claim.

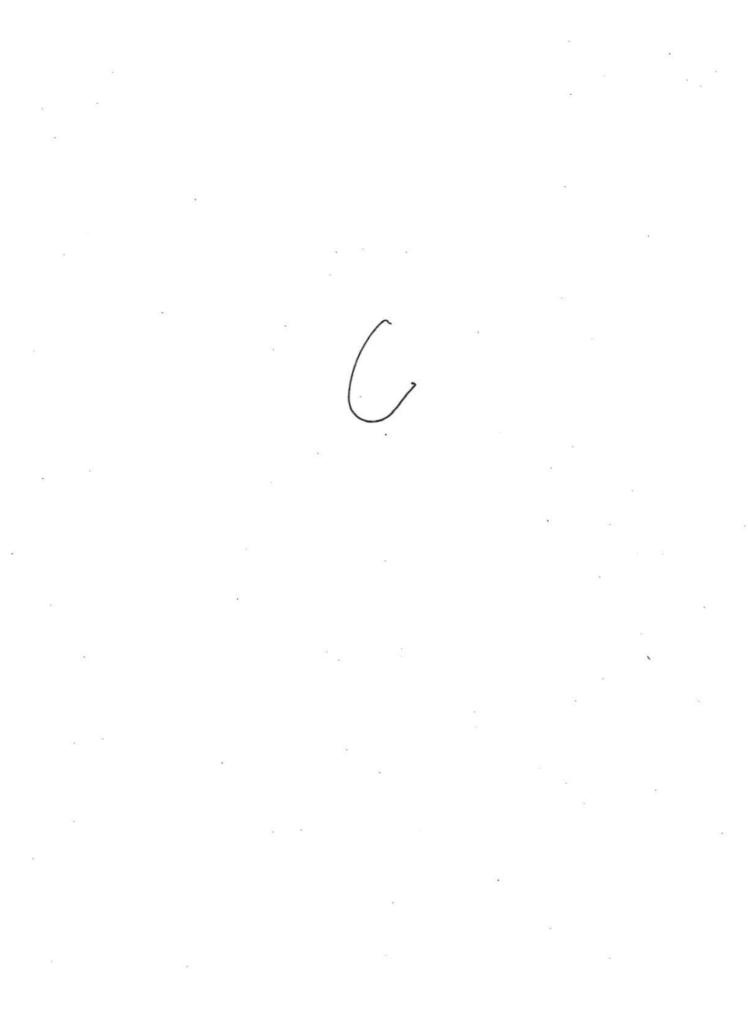
Please refer to <u>http://www.fda.gov/cder/biologics/default.htm</u> for important information regarding therapeutic biological products, including the addresses for submissions.

If you have any questions, call Lori M. Gorski, Project Manager, at (301) 796-0722.

Sincerely,

Mark J. Goldberger, M.D., M.P.H. Director Office of Antimicrobial Products Center for Drug Evaluation and Research

Enclosure





US006407213B1

(12) United States Patent

Carter et al.

US 6,407,213 B1 (10) Patent No.: (45) Date of Patent: Jun. 18, 2002

(54) METHOD FOR MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES

- (75) Inventors: Paul J. Carter; Leonard G. Presta, both of San Francisco, CA (US)
- (73) Assignee: Genentech, Inc., South San Francisco, CA (US)
- Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this Notice: (*)patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 0 days.
- 08/146,206 (21) Appl. No.:
- (22) PCT Filed: Jun. 15, 1992
- PCT No .: PCT/US92/05126 (86)
 - § 371 (c)(1), (2), (4) Date: Nov. 17, 1993

Related U.S. Application Data

- Continuation-in-part of application No. 07/715,272, filed on (63) Jun. 14, 1991, now abandoned.
- (51) Int. Cl.⁷ C07K 16/00
- U.S. Cl. 530/387.3; 435/69.6; 435/69.7; (52)
- 435/70.21; 435/91; 536/23.53; 424/133.1 (58)Field of Search 435/69.6, 69.7,

435/70.21, 91, 172.2, 240.1, 240.27, 252.3, 320.1, 328; 536/23.53; 424/133.1; 530/387.3

(56) **References** Cited

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

4,816,567	A	3/1989	Cabilly et al.
4,845,198			Urdal et al 530/388.22
5,132,405			Huston et al 530/387.3
5,225,539			Winter 530/389.3
5,530,101			Queen et al 530/387.3
5,558,864			Bendig et al 424/133.1
5,585,089			Queen et al 424/133.1
5,677,171			Hudziak et al
5.693,762			Queen et al 530/387.2
5.714.350	A	2/1998	Co et al 435/69.6
5,772,997		6/1998	Hudziak et al 424/130.1
5,821,337		10/1998	Carter et al 530/387.3
5,834,598		11/1998	Lowman et al 530/399
5,859,205	A	1/1999	Adair et al 530/387.3

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

AU	85058/91	3/1992	C07K/15/12
EP	120694	10/1984	
EP	125023 A1	11/1984	
EP	0 239 400	• 9/1987	C12N/15/00
EP	323806 A1	7/1989	
EP	328404 A1	8/1989	A61K/39/395
EP	338745 A1	10/1989	
EP	365209 A2	4/1990	
EP	365997 A2	5/1990	
EP	368684	5/1990	
EP	403156 A1	12/1990	
EP	438310 A2	7/1991	
EP	438312 A2	7/1991	
EP	440351 A2	8/1991	
EP	0 460 167 BI	12/1991	
EP	0 519 596 A1	12/1992	

EP	0 592 106	AI	4/1994	
EP	0 620 276		10/1994	
EP	682040	AI	11/1995	
EP	451216	B1	1/1996	C12P/21/08
EP	432249	B 1	9/1996	
GB	2 188941		10/1987	
WO	WO 87/02671		5/1987	
WO	WO 88/09344		12/1988	
WO	WO 89/01783		3/1989	
WO	WO 89/06692		7/1989	
WO	WO 89/09622		10/1989	
WO	WO 90/07861		7/1990	
WO	90/07861		• 7/1990	C12P/Z1/00
wo	WO 91/07492		5/1991	
WO	WO 91/07500		5/1991	
WO	WO 91/09966		7/1991	C12P/21/08
WO	WO 91/09968		7/1991	C12P/21/08
WO	WO 91/09967		11/1991	Summer and a second second second
WO	WO 92/01047		1/1992	
WO	WO 92/04380		3/1992	
WO	WO 92/04381		3/1992	
WO	WO 92/05274		4/1992	
WO	WO 92/11383		7/1992	
WO	WO 92/11018		9/1992	A61K/35/14
WO	WO 92/15683		9/1992	
wo	WO 92/16562		10/1992	
wo	WO 92/22653		12/1992	
WO	WO 93/02191		2/1993	
wo	94/11509		5/1994	
WO	WO 94/12214		6/1994	

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Riechmann et al. [Nature 332:323-327 (1988)].*

Queen et al. [Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 86:10029-10033 (1989)].*

Roitt [Immunology, published 1985, by Gower Medical Publishing Ltd. (London, England) p. 5.5].*

Tramontano et al. [J. Mol. Biol. 215:175-182 (1990)].*

"Biosym Technologies" in New Products, Chemical Design Automation 3 (Dec. 1988).

"Polygen Corporation" in New Products, Chemical Design Automation 3 (Nov. 1988).

Adair et al., "Humanization of the murine anti-human CD3 monoclonal antibody OKT3" Hum. Antibod. Hybridomas 5:41-47 (1994).

Chothia et al., "Principles of protein-protein recognition" Nature 256:705-708 (1975).

Chothia et al., "Transmission of conformational change in insulin" Nature 302:500-505 (1983).

Corti et al., "Idiotope Determining Regions of a Mouse Monoclonal Antibody and Its Humanized Versions" J. Mol. Biol. 235:53-60 (1994).

(List continued on next page.)

Primary Examiner-Anthony C. Caputa Assistant Examiner-Minh-Tam Davis (74) Attorney, Agent, or Firm-Wendy M. Lee

ABSTRACT (57)

Variant immunoglobulins, particularly humanized antibody polypeptides are provided, along with methods for their preparation and use. Consensus immunoglobulin sequences and structural models are also provided.

82 Claims, 9 Drawing Sheets

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Couto et al., "Anti-BA46 Monoclonal Antibody Mc3 Humanization Using a Novel Positional Consensus and in Vivo and in Vitro Characterization" Cancer Research Supplement 55:1717-1722 (1995).

Couto et al., "Humanization of KC4G3, an Anti-Human Carcinoma Antibody" Hybridoma 13:215-219 (1994).

Ellis et al., "Engineered Anti-CD38 Monoclonal Antibodies for Immunotherapy of Multiple Myeloma" *The Journal of Immunology* pp. 925–937 (1995).

Hieter et al., "Evolution of Human Immunoglobulin K J Region Genes" *The Journal of Biological Chemistry* 257:1516-1522 (1982).

Lesk, Arthur M., "How Different Amino Acid Sequences Determine Similar Protein Structures: The Structure and Evolutionary Dynamics of the Globins" J. Mol. Biol. 135:225-270 (1980).

Matsumura et al., "Hydrophobic stabilization in T4 lysozyme determined directly by multiple substitutions of Ile 3" *Nature* 334:406-410 (1988).

Morrison, S. L., "Transfectomas Provide Novel Chimeric Antibodies" Science 229:1202-1207 (Sep. 20, 1985).

Nakatani et al., "Humanization of mouse anti-human IL-2 receptor antibody B-B10" Protein Engineering 7:435-443 (1994).

Obtomo et al., "Humanization of Mouse ONS-M21 Antibody with the Aid of Hybrid Variable Regions" *Molecular Immunology* 32:407-416 (1995).

Rodrigues et al., "Engineering a humanized bispecific $F(ab')_2$ fragment for improved binding to T cells" Int. J. Cancer (Suppl.) 7:45-50 (1992).

Sha et al., "A Heavy-Chain Grafted Antibody that Recognizes the Tumor-Associated TAG72 Antigen" Cancer Biotherapy 9:341-349 (1994).

Tempest et al., "Identification of framework residues required to restore antigen binding during reshaping of a monoclonal antibody against the glycoprotein gB of human cytomegalovirus" *Int. J. Biol. Macromol.* 17:37–42 (1995). Tramontano, "Structural Determinants of the Conformations of Medium–Sized Loops in Proteins" *Proteins* 6:382–394 (1989).

Uchiyama et al., "A Monoclonal Antibody (Anti-Tac) Reactive with Activated and Functionally Mature Human T Cells" *Journal of Immunology* 126:1393-1397 (1981).

Vincenti et al., "Interleukin-2-Receptor Blockade with Daclizumab to Prevent Acute Rejection in Renal Transplantation" New Engl. J. Med. 338:161-165 (1998).

Vitetta et al., "Redesigning Nature's Poisons to Create Anti-Tumor Reagents" Science 238:1098-1104 (1987).

Waldmann et al., "Interleukin 2 Receptor (Tac Antigen) Expression in HTLV-1-associated Adult T-Cell Leukemia" Cancer Research 45:4559s-4562s (1985).

Waldmann, Thomas A., "The Structure, Function, and Expression of Interleukin-2 Receptors on Normal and Malignant Lymphocytes" Science 232:727-732 (1986).

Wu et al., "An Analysis of the Sequences of the Variable Regions of Bence Jones Proteins and Myeloma Light Chains and Their Implications for Antibody Complementarity" Journal of Experimental Medicine 132:211-250 (1970).

Rhodes, P., "Recombinant antibodies from CHO cells" Abstr Pap Am Chem Soc (Abstract No. 60 from the 199th American Chemical Society National Meeting held in Boston, MA Apr. 22–27, 1990) 199(1–2):BIOT 60 (Apr. 1990). Amzel and Poljak, "Three-dimensional structure of immunoglobulins" Ann. Rev. Biochem. 48:961-967 (1979).

Bindon et al., "Human monoclonal IgG isotypes differ in complement activating function at the level of C4 as well as C1q" *Journal of Experimental Medicine* 168(1):127–142 (Jul. 1988).

Boulianne, G. L. et al., "Production of functional chimaeric mouse/human antibody" *Nature* 312(5995):643-646 (Dec. 1984).

Brown et al., "Anti-Tac-H, a humanized antibody to the interleukin 2 receptor, prolongs primate cardiac allograft survival" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 88:2663-2667 (1991). Bruccoleri, "Structure of antibody hypervariable loops reproduced by a conformational search algorithm" *Nature* (erratum to article in Nature 335(6190):564-568 and) 336:266 (1988).

Bruggemann, M. et al., "Comparison of the effector functions of human immunoglobulins using a matched set of chimeric antibodies" *Journal of Experimental Medicine* 166:1351-1361 (1987).

Burgess et al., "Possible Dissociation of the Heparin-binding and Mitogenic Activities of Heparin-binding (Acidic Fibroblast) Growth Factor-1 from Its Receptor-binding Activities by Site-directed Mutagenesis of a Single Lysine Residue" Journal of Cell Biology 111:2129-2138 (1990).

Carter et al., "Humanization of an anti-p185^{HEE2} antibody for human cancer therapy" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* 89:4285-4289 (1992).

Cheetham, J., "Reshaping the antibody combining site by CDR replacement-tailoting or tinkering to fit?" *Protein Engineering* 2(3):170–172 (1988).

Chothia and Lesk, "Canonical Structures for the Hypervariable Regions" J. Mol. Biol. 196:901-917 (1987).

Chothia et al., "The predicted structure of immunoglobulin D1.3 and its comparison with the crystal structure" *Science* 233:755-758 (Aug. 15, 1986).

Chothia, C. et al., "Conformations of immunoglobulin hypervariable regions" *Nature* 342(6252):877-883 (1989). Chothia, Cyrus, "Domain association in immunoglobulin molecules: The packing of variable domains" *J. Mol. Biol.* 186:651-663 (1985).

Clark et al., "The improved lytic function and in vivo efficacy of monovalent monoclonal CD3 antibodies" European Journal of Immunology 19:381-388 (1989).

Co et al., "Humanized antibodies for antiviral therapy" Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 88:2869-2873 (1991).

Coussens et al., "Tyrosine Kinase Receptor with Extensive Homology to EGF Receptor Shares Chromosomal Location with neu Oncogene" *Science* 230:1132–1139 (1985).

Daugherty, BL et al., "Polymerase chain reaction facilitates the cloning, CDR-grafting, and rapid expression of a murine monoclonal antibody directed against the CD18 component of leukocyte integrins" *Nucleic Acids Research* 19(9):2471-2476 (May 11, 1991).

Davies, D. R. et al., "Antibody-Antigen Complexes" Ann. Rev. Biochem. 59:439-473 (1990).

Epp et al., "The molecular structure of a dimer composed of the variable portions of the Bence-Jones protein REI refined at 2.0-A resolution" *Biochemistry* 14(22):4943-4952 (1975).

Fendly et al., "Characterization of murine monoclonal antibodies reactive to either the human epidermal growth factor receptor or HER2/neu gene product" *Cancer Research* 50:1550–1558 (1990). Furey et al., "Structure of a novel Bence-Jones protein (Rhe) fragment at 1.6 A resolution" J. Mol. Biol. 167(3):661-692 (Jul. 5, 1983).

Gorman, SD et al., "Reshaping a therapeutic CD4 antibody" Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 88(10):4181-4185 (May 15, 1991).

Gregory et al., "The solution conformations of the subclasses of human IgG deduced from sedimentation and small angle X-ray scattering studies" *Molecular Immunology* 24(8):821-829 (Aug. 1987).

Hale et al., "Remission induction in non-hodgkin lymphoma with reshaped human monoclonal antibody campath-1H" Lancet 1:1394-1399 (1988).

Harris and Emery, "Therapeutic antibodies-the coming of age" Tibtech 11:42-44 (Feb. 1993).

Huber et al., "Crystallographic structure studies of an IgG molecule and an Fc fragment" Nature 264:415-420 (Dec. 2, 1976).

Hudziak et al., "p185^{HER2} Monoclonal Antibody Has Antiproliferative Effects In Vitro and Sensitizes Human Breast Tumor Cells to Tumor Necrosis Factor" *Molecular & Cellular Biology* 9(3):1165–1172 (1989).

Jaffers, G. J. et al., "Monoclonal antibody therapy. Anti-idiotypic and non-anti-idiotypic antibodies to OKT3 arising despite intense immunosuppression" *Transplantation* 41(5):572-578 (May 1986).

Jones, P. T. et al., "Replacing the complementarity-determining regions in a human antibody with those from a mouse" *Nature* 321(6069):522-525 (1986).

Junghans et al., "Anti-Tac-H, a humanized antibody to the interleukin 2 receptor with new features for immunotherapy in malignant and immune disorders" *Cancer Research* 50(5):1495–1502 (Mar. 1, 1990).

Kabat et al. Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest, Bethesda, MD:National Institutes of Health pp. iii-xxvii, 41-176 (1987).

King et al., "Amplification of a Novel v-erbB-Related Gene in a Human Mammary Carcinoma" *Science* 229:974–976 (1985).

Lazar et al., "Transforming Growth Factor α : Mutation of Aspartic Acid 47 and Leucine 48 Results in Different Biological Activities" *Molecular & Cellular Biology* 8(3):1247-1252 (1988).

Love et al, "Recombinant antibodies possessing novel effector functions" *Methods in Enzymology* 178:515–527 (1989). Lupu et al., "Direct interaction of a ligand for the erbB2 oncogene product with the EGF receptor and p185^{erbB2"} *Science* 249:1552–1555 (1990).

Margni RA and Binaghi RA, "Nonprecipitating asymmetric antibodies" Ann. Rev. Immunol. 6:535-554 (1988).

Margolies et al., "Diversity of light chain variable region sequences among rabbit antibodies elicited by the same antigens." *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 72:2180-84 (Jun. 1975).

Marquart et al., "Crystallographic refinement and atomic models of the intact immunoglobulin molecule Kol and its antigen-binding fragment at 3.0 A and 1.0 A resolution" J. Mol. Biol. 141(4):369-391 (Aug. 25, 1980).

Mian, IS et al., "Structure, function and properties of antibody binding sites" J. Mol. Biol. 217(1):133-151 (Jan. 5, 1991).

Miller, R. et al., "Monoclonal antibody therapeutic trials in seven patients with T-cell lymphoma" *Blood* 62:988-995 (1983).

Morrison, S. L. et al., "Chimeric human antibody molecules: mouse antigen-binding domains with human constant region domains" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 81(21):6851-6855 (Nov. 1984).

Neuberger et al., "Recombinant antibodies possessing novel effector functions" *Nature* 312(5995):604–608 (Dec. 1984). Neuberger, M. S. et al., "A hapten-specific chimaeric IgE antibody with human physiological effector function" *Nature* 314(6008):268–270 (Mar. 1985).

Novotny and Haber, "Structural invariants of antigen binding: comparison of immunoglobulin V_L-V_H and V_L-V_L domain dimers" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 82(14):4592-4596 (Jul. 1985).

Pluckthun, Andreas, "Antibody engineering: advances from the use of *Escherichia coli* expression systems" *Biotechnol*ogy 9:545-51 (1991).

Queen, M. et al., "A humanized antibody that binds to the interleukin 2 receptor" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 86:10029-10033 (1989).

Riechmann, L. et al., "Reshaping human antibodies for therapy" Nature 332:323-327 (1988).

Roitt et al. Immunology (Gower Medical Publishing Ltd., London, England) pp. 5.5 (1985).

Saul et al., "Preliminary refinement and structural analysis of the Fab fragment from human immunoglobulin new at 2.0 A resolution" *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 253(2):585–597 (Jan. 25, 1978).

Schroff, R. et al., "Human anti-murine immunoglobulin responses in patients receiving monoclonal antibody therapy" *Cancer Research* 45:879–885 (1985).

Segal et al., "The three-dimensional structure of a phosphorylcholine-binding mouse immunoglobulin Fab and the nature of the antigen binding site" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* USA 71(11):4298-4302 (Nov. 1974).

Shalaby et al., "Development of humanized bispecific antibodies reactive with cytotoxic lymphocytes and tumor cells overexpressing the HER2 protooncogene" *Journal of Experimental Medicine* 175(1):217–225 (Jan. 1, 1992).

Shepard and Lewis, "Resistance of tumor cells to tumor necrosis factor" J. Clin. Immunol. 8(5):333-395 (1988).

Sheriff et al., "Three-dimensional structure of an antibodyantigen complex" Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA 84(22):8075-8079 (Nov. 1987).

Sherman et al., "Haloperidol binding to monoclonal antibodies" Journal of Biological Chemistry 263:4064-4074 (1988).

Silverton et al., "Three-dimensional structure of an intact human immunoglobulin" Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 74:5140-5144 (1977).

Slamon et al., "Human Breast Cancer: Correlation of Relapse and Survival with Amplification of the HER-2/neu Oncogene" Science 235:177-182 (1987).

Slamon et al., "Studies of the HER-2/neu proto-oncogene in human breast and ovarian cancer" Science 244:707-712 (1989).

Snow and Amzel, "Calculating three-dimensional changes in protein structure due to amino-acid substitutions: the variable region of immunoglobulins" *Protein: Structure, Function, and Genetics,* Alan R. Liss, Inc. vol. 1:267-279 (1986).

Sox et al., "Attachment of carbohydrate to the variable region of myeloma immunoglubulin light chains" Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 66:975-82 (Jul. 1970). Spiegelberg et al., "Localization of the carbohydrate within the variable region of light and heavy chains of human yG myeloma proteins" Biochemistry 9:4217-23 (Oct. 1970).

Takeda et al., "Construction of chimaeric processed immunoglobulin genes containing mouse variable and human constant region sequences" Nature 314(6010):452-454 (Apr. 1985).

Tao et al., "Role of Carbohydrate in the Structure and Effector Functions Mediated by the H uman IgG Constant Region" J. Immunol. 143(8):2595-2601 (1989).

Tramontano et al., "Framework residue 71 is a major determinant of the position and conformation of the second hypervariable region in the VH domains of immunoglobulins" J-Mol-Biol 215(1):175-182 (Sep. 5, 1990).

Verhoeyen, M. et al., "Reshaping human antibodies: grafting an antilysozyme activity" Science 239(4847):1534-1536 (Mar. 25, 1988).

Waldmann, T., "Monoclonal antibodies in diagnosis and therapy" Science 252:1657-1662 (1991).

Wallick et al., "Glycosylation of a VH residue of a monoclonal antibody against alpha (1-----6) dextran increases its affinity for antigen" Journal of Experimental Medicine 168(3):1099-1109 (Sep. 1988). Winter and Milstein, "Man-made antibodies" Nature

349(6307):293-299 (Jan. 24, 1991).

Yamamoto et al., "Similarity of protein encoded by the human c-erb-B-2 gene to epidermal growth factor receptor" Nature 319:230-34 (1986).

Carter et al., "High level escherichia coli expression and production of a bivalent humanized antibody fragment" Bio/Technology 10:163-167 (1992)

Foote et al., "Antibody Framework Residues Affecting the Conformation of the Hypervariable Loops" J. Mol. Biol. 224:487-499 (1992).

Foote, J., "Humanized Antibodies" Nova acta Leopoldina 61(269):103-110 (1989).

Kabat et al., "Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest", Bethesda, MD:National Institute of Health pp. 14-32 (1983)

Kettleborough et al., "Humanization of a Mouse Monoclonal Antibody by CDR-grafting: the Importance of Framework Residues on Loop Conformation" Protein Engineering 4(7):773-783 (1991)

Maeda et al., "Construction of Reshaped Human Antibodies with HIV-neutralizing Activity" Hum. Antibod. Hybridomas 2:124-134 (Jul. 1991).

Riechmann et al, "Expression of an Antibody Fv Fragment in Myeloma Cells" J. Mol. Biol. 203:825-828 (1988)

Routledge et al., "A Humanized Monovalent CD3 Antibody which Can Activate Homologous Complement" European Journal of Immunology 21:2717-2725 (1991).

Shearman et al., "Construction, Expression and Characterization of Humanized Antibodies Directed Against the Human a/B T Cell Receptor" J. Immunol. 147(12):4366-4373 (Dec. 15, 1991).

Tempest et al., "Reshaping a Human Monoclonal Antibody to Inhibit Human Respiratory Syncytial Virus Infection In Vivo" Bio/Technology 9:266-271 (Mar. 1991).

Brown, Jr. et al., "Anti-Tac-H, a humanized antibody to the interleukin 2 receptor, prolongs primate cardiac allograft survival" Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 88:2663-2667 (1991). Casale et al., "Use of an anti-IgE humanized monoclonal antibody in ragweed-induced allergic rhinitis" J. Allergy Clin. Immunol. 100:110-121 (1997).

Fahy et al., "The Effect of an Anti-IgE Monocional Antibody on the Early- and Late-Phase Responses to Allergen Inhalation in Asthmatic Subjects" Am J. Respir. Crit. Care Med 155:1828-1834 (1997).

Mathieson et al., "Monoclonal-Antibody Therapy in Systemic Vasculitis" New England J. of Medicine pp. 250-254 (Jul. 1990).

Presta et al., "Humanization of an anti-vascular endothelial growth factor monoclonal antibody for the therapy of solid and other disorders" tumors Cancer Research 57(20):4593-4599 (Oct. 15, 1997).

Amit et al., "Three-Dimensional Structure of an Antigen-Antibody Complex at 2.8 A Resolution" Science 233:747-753 (Aug. 1986).

Amzel et al., "The Three Dimensional Structure of a Combining Region-Ligand Complex of Immunglobulin New at 3.5-A Resolution" Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 71(4):1427-1430 (Apr. 1974).

Baselga et al., "Phase II Study of Weekly Intravenous Recombinant Humanized Anti-p185/HER2 Monoclonal Antibody in Patients With HER2/neu-Overexpressing Metastatic Breast Cancer" J. Clin. Oncol. 14(3):737-744 (1996)

Beverley & Callard, "Distinctive functional charcteristics of human "T" lymphocytes defined by E rosetting or a monoclonal anti-T cell antibody" European Journal of Immunology 11:329-334 (1981).

Bird et al., "Single-chain antigen-binding proteins" Science 242:423-426 (Oct. 1988).

Brennan et al., "Preparation of bispecific antibodies by chemical recombination of monoclonal immunoglobulin G₁ fragments" Science 229:81-83 (Jul. 1985).

Bruccoleri et al., "Structure of antibody hypervariable loops reproduced by a conformational search algorithm" Nature 335:564-568 (Oct. 1988).

Caron et al., "Biological and Immunological Features of Humanized M195 (Anti-CD33) Monoclonal Antibodies" Cancer Research 52:6761-6767 (Dec. 1992).

Chothia & Lesk, "The relation between the divergence of sequence and structure in proteins" EMBO Journal 5(4):823-826 (1986).

Co & Queen, "Humanized antibodies for therapy" Nature 351:501-502 (Jun. 1991).

Co et al., "Chimeric and Humanized Antibodies with Specificity for the CD33 Antigen" J. of Immunology 148(4):1149-1154 (Feb. 1992).

Co et al., "Humanized Anti-Lewis Y Antibodies: In Vitro Properties and Pharmacokinetics in Rhesus Monkeys" Cancer Research 56:1118-1125 (Mar. 1996).

Colman et al., "Crystal and Molecular Structure of the Dimer of Variable Domains of the Bence-Jones Protein ROY" J. Mol. Biol. 116:73-79 (1977).

Colman et al., "Three-dimensional structure of a complex of antibody with influenza virus neuraminidase" Nature 326:358-363 (Mar. 1987).

Cook et al., "A map of the human immunoglbulin V_H locus completed by analysis of the telometric region of chromosome 14q" Nature Genetics 7:162-168 (Jun. 1994).

Darsley & Rees, "Nucleotide sequences of five anti-lysozyme monoclonal antibodies" EMBO Journal 4(2):393-398 (1985).

Davies & Metzger, "Structural Basis of Antibody Function" Ann. Rev. Immunol. 1:87-117 (1983).

Davies et al., "Antibody-Antigen Complexes" Journal of Biological Chemistry 263(22):10541–10544 (Aug. 1988). Eigenbrot et al., "X-Ray Structures of Fragments From Binding and Nonbinding Versions of a Humanized Anti-CD18 Antibody: Structural Indications of the Key Role of $V_{\rm FI}$ Residues 59 to 65" Proteins 18:49–62 (1994). Eigenbrot et al., "X-ray structures of the antigen-binding domains from three variants of humanized anti-p185HER2 antibody 4D5 and comparison with molecular modeling" J. Mol. Biol. 229:969–995 (1993).

Ellison et al., "The nucleotide sequence of a human immunoglobulin $C_{\gamma 1}$ gene" Nucleic Acids Research 10(13):4071-4079 (1982).

Emery & Adair, "Humanised monoclonal antibodies for therapeutic applications" *Exp. Opin. Invest. Drugs* 3(3):241-251 (1994).

Epp et al., "Crystal and Molecular Structure of a Dimer Composed of the Variable Portions of the Bence-Jones Protein REI" European Journal of Biochemistry 45:513-524 (1974).

Fanger et al., "Bispecific antibodies and targeted cellular cytotoxicity" Immunology Today 12(2):51-54 (1991).

Fanger et al., "Cytotoxicity mediated by human Fc receptors for IgG" Immunology Today 10(3):92-99 (1989).

Feldmann et al., "A Hypothetical Space-Filling Model of the V-Regions of the Galactan-Binding Myeloma Immunoglobulin J539" *Molecular Immunology* 18(8):683-698 (1981).

Fendley et al., "The Extracellular Domain of HER2/neu Is a Potential Immunogen for Active Specific Immunotherapy of Breast Cancer" J. Biol. Resp. Mod. 9:449-455 (1990).

Glennie et al., "Preparation and Performance of Bispecific F(ab'y)₂ Antibody Containing Thioether-Linked Fab'y Fragments" J. Immunol. 139(7):2367-2375 (Oct. 1, 1987).

Gonzalez et al., "Humanization of Murine 6G425:An Anti-IL8 Monoclonal Antibody Which Blocks Binding of IL8 to Human Neutrophils" 1996 Keystone Symposia on Exploring and Exploiting Antibody and Ig Superfamily Combining Sites (Poster) pp. 1-21 (Feb. 1996).

Gussow & Seemann, "Humanization of Monoclonal Antibodies" Meth. Enzymology, Academic Press, Inc. vol. 203:99-121 (1991).

Hieter et al., "Cloned human and mouse kappa immunoglobulin constant and J region genes conserve homology in functional segments" *Cell* 22 (Part 1):197-207 (1980).

Houghton, A., "Building a better monoclonal antibody" Immunology Today 9(9):265-267 (1988).

Huston et al., "Protein engineering of antibody binding sites: Recovery of specific activity in an anti-digoxin single-chain Fv analogue produced in *Escherichia coli*" Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 85:5879–5883 (Aug. 1988).

Isaacs et al., "Humanised Monoclonal Antibody Therapy for Rheumatoid Arthritis" Lancet 340:748–752 (Sep. 26, 1992) Johnson et al., "Biological and Molecular Modeling Studies Comparing Murine Monoclonal Antibodies with Their Engineered Chimeric and Humanized Counterparts" J. Cell. Biochem. Suppl 0 (13 Part A) (18th Ann. UCLA Symp on Mol. & Cell. Biol., Park City, UT Jan. 17–22, 1989) pp. 87 (1989).

Kabat E., "Origins of Antibody Complementarity and Specificity—Hypervariable Regions and the Minigenen Hypothesis" J. of Immunology 125(3):961-969 (Sep. 1980). Kabat et al. Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest, U.S. Dept. of Health and Human Services, NIH, 5th edition vol. 1:103-108, 324-331 (1991).

Kindt & Capra The Antibody Enigma, New York:Pleaum Press pp. 79-86 (1984).

Lesk & Chothia, "Evolution of Proteins Formed by β -Sheets" J. Mol. Biol. 160:325-342 (1982).

Lesk & Chothia, "The response of protein structures to amino-acid sequence changes" *Phil. Trans. R. Soc. Lond.* A 317:345-356 (1986).

Mariuzza et al., "The Structure Basis of Antigen-Antibody Recognition" Ann. Rev. Biophys. Biophys. Chem. 16:139-159 (1987).

Nadler et al., "Immunogenicity of Humanized and Human Monoclonal Antibodies" Clin. Pharmacology & Therapeutics pp. 180 (Feb. 1994).

Nelson, H., "Targeted Cellular Immunotherapy with Bifunctional Antibodies" Cancer Cells 3:163-172 (1991).

Neuberger et al., "Antibody Engineering" Proceedings 8th Intl. Biotech. Symp., Paris II:792-799 (1988).

Newmark, P., "Making Chimeric Antibodies Even More Human" Bio/Technology 6:468 (May 1988).

Nishimura et al., "Human c-erbB-2 Proto-Oncogene Product as a Target for Bispecific-Antibody-Directed Adoptive Tumor Immunotherapy" Int. J. Cancer 50:800-804 (1992).

Nitta et al., "Preliminary trial of specific targeting therapy against malignant glioma" Lancet 335(8686):368-371 (Feb. 17, 1990).

Nitta, T. et al., "Bispecific $F(ab')_2$ monomer prepared with anti-CD3 and anti-tumor monoclonal antibodies is most potent in induction of cytolysis of human T cells" *European Journal of Immunology* 19:1437–1441 (1989).

Nolan et al., "Bifunctional antibodies: concept, production and applications" *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta* 1040:1-11 (1990).

O'Connor et al., "Calcium Dependence of an Anti-Protein C Humanized Antibody Involves Framework Residues" (manuscript).

Orlandi et al., "Cloning Immunoglobulin Variable Domains for Expression by the Polymerase Chain Reaction" Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 86:3833–3837 (May 1989).

Orlandi et al., "Cloning of cDNA Corresponding to Heavy and Light Chain Immunoglobulin Variable Domains" Protein and Pharmaceutical Engineering pp. 90 (1989).

Ostberg & Queen, "Human and humanized monoclonal antibodies: preclinical studies and clinical experience" *Biochem. Soc. Transactions* pp. 1038–1043 (1995).

Pedlan et al., "Model-building Studies of Antigen-binding Sites: The Hapten-binding Site of MOPC-315" Cold Springs Harbor Symposia On Quantitative Biology XLI:627-637 (1977).

Padlan, E., "Anatomy of the Antibody Molecule" Molecular Immunology 31(3):169-217 (1994).

Padlan, E., "Evaluation of the Structural Variation Among Light Chain Variable Domains" *Molecular Immunology* 16:287-296 (1979).

Palm & Hilschmann, "Primary structure of a crystalline monoclonal immunoglobulin K-type L-chain, subgroup I (Bence-Jones preotin Rei); isolation & characterization of the tryptic peptides: . . . " Hoppes-Seyler's Z. Physiol. Chem. 356:167-191 (Feb. 1975). Palm & Hilschmann, "The primary structure of a crystalline, monoclonal immunoglobulin-L-chain of the x-type, subgroup I (Bence-Jones Protein Rei): a contribution to the elucidation of the three-dimensional structure of the immunoglobulins" Hoppe-Seyler's Z. Physiol. Chem. 354:1651-1654 (Dec. 1973).

Panka et al., "Variable region framework differences result in decreased or increased affinity of variant anti-digoxin antibodies" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 85:3080-3084 (May 1988).

Presta et al., "Humanization of an Antibody Directed Against IgE" J. Immunol. 151(5):2623–2632 (Sep. 1, 1993). Preval & Fougereau, "Specific Interaction between V_H and V_L Regions of Human Monoclonal Immunoglobulins" J. Mol. Biol. 102:657–678 (1976).

Queen et al., "Construction of Humanized Antibodies and Testing in Primates" J. Cell. Biochem. Suppl. 15 (Part E) (20th Ann. Mtg. Keystone Symp. Denver, CO Mar. 10–16, 1991) pp. 137 (1991).

Queen et al., "Humanised antibodies to the IL-2 receptor" Protein Eng. Antibody Mol. Prophyl. Ther. Appl. Man, Clark, M., Nottingham, UK:Academic Titles pp. 159-170 (1993).

Rhodes & Birch, "Large-Scale Production of Proteins from Mammalian Cells" *Bio/Technology* 6:518, 521, 523 (May 1988).

Riechmann, "Humanizing of Recombinant Antibodies" (Intl. Symp. on Clin. Appl. of Monoclonal Antibodies, Guildford, England) pp. 33–34 (Sep. 1987). Riechmann & Winter, "Recombinant Antibodies" (U. of

Riechmann & Winter, "Recombinant Antibodies" (U. of London Royal Postgraduate Medical School, Wolfson Institute, Abstract) (May 1987).

Riechmann et al. Alignment of VL Sequences (1988).

Roberts & Rees, "Generation of an antibody with enhanced affinity and specificity for its antigen by protein engineering" *Nature* 328:731-734 (Aug. 1987).

Rostapshov et al., "Effective method for obtaining long nucleotide chains on partially complementary templates" *FEBS Letters* 249(2):379–382 (Jun. 1989). Schneider et al., "The Anti-Idiotypic Response by Cyno-

Schneider et al., "The Anti-Idiotypic Response by Cynomolgus Mondkeys to Humanized Anti-Tac Is Primarily Directed to Complementarity-Determining Regions H1, H2, and L3" J. of Immunology 150:3086-3090 (Apr. 1993).

Sedlacek et al., "Monoclonal Antibodies in Tumor Therapy", Karger pp. 119-126, 133-179 (1988).

Shields et al., "Inhibition of Allergic Reactions with Antibodies to IgE" International Archives of Allergy and Immunology 107(1-3):308-312 (May 1995).

Sims et al., "A Humanized CD18 Antibody Can Block Function Without Cell Destruction" The Journal of Immunology 151(4):2296-2308 (Aug. 1993).

Smith-Gill et al., "A Three-dimensional Model of an Anti-lysozyme Antibody" *Mol. Biol.* 194:713-724 (1987). Songsivilai et al., "Bispecific antibody: a tool for diagnosis and treatment of disease" *Clin. Exp. Immunol.* 79:315-321 (1990).

Stanford, "A Predictive Method for Determining Possible Three-dimensional Foldings of Immunoglobulin Backbones Around Antibody Combining Sites" *Theor. Biol.* 88:421-439 (1981).

Stickney et al., "Bifunctional Antibody: ZCE/CHA^{III}Indium BLEDTA-IV Clinical Imaging in Colorectal Carcinoma" Antibody, Immuno Radiopharm 2:1-13 (1989).

Tighe et al., "Delayed Allograft Rejection in Primates Treated with Anti-IL-2 Receptor Monoclonal antibody Campath-6" Transplantation 45(1):226-228 (Jan. 1988).

Verhoeyen & Riechmann, "Engineering of Antibodies" BioEssays 8(2):74-78 (Feb./Mar. 1988).

Verhoeyen et al., "Grafting Hypervariable Regions in Antibodies" Protein Structure, Folding, and Design 2 (Proc. DuPont-UCLA Symp. Streamboat Springs, CO, Apr. 4–11, 1987), Dale L. Oxender, New York: Alan R. Liss, Inc. pp. 501–502 (1987).

Verhoeyen et al., "Humanising Mouse Antibodies: A Protein Engineering Approach" Soc. for Analytical Cytology (XIIth Intl. Mtg. for the Soc. for Analytical Cytology, Cambridge, UK) pp. 22 and slide presented at mtg.

Verhoeyen et al., "Re-shaped human anti-PLAP antibodies" Monoclonal Antibodies Applications in clinical oncology, Epenetos, 1st edition, Chapman & Hall Medical pp. 37-43 (1991).

Ward et al., "Expression and Secretion of Repertoires of VH Domains in *Escherichia coli*: Isolation of Antigen Binding Activites" *Progress in Immunology* (7th Intl. Congress Immunol. Berlin, W. Germany), F. Melchers vol. VII:1144-1151 (1989).

Ward, E.S. et al., "Binding activities of a repertoire of single immunoglobulin variable domains secreted from *Escherichia coli*" *Nature* 341:544–546 (1989).

Werther et al., "Humanization of an Anti-Lymphocyte Function-Associated Antigen (LFA)-1 Monoclonal Antibody and Reengineering of the Humanized Antibody for Binding to Rhesus LFA-1" J. of Immunology pp. 4986-4995 (1996). Whittle et al., "Construction and Expression of A

CDR-Grafted Anti-TNF Antibody" J. Cell Biochem. Suppl. 0 (Symp. on Protein and Pharm. Eng. Mol. and Cell. Biol. Park City, Utah)13 Part A:96 (1989).

Winter & Neuberger, "Restructuring Enzymes and Antibodies" Investigation and Exploitation of Antibody Combining Sites, Eric Reid, Plenum Press pp. 139-140 (1985).

Winter et al., "Protein Engineering by Site Directed Mutagenesis" Chemical Synthesis in Molecular Biology, H. Blocker et al., VCH pp. 189–197 (1987).

Winter G., "Antibody Engineering" Phil. Trans. R. Soc. Lond. B 324:99-109 (1989).

Woodle et al., "Humanized OKT3 Antibodies: Successful Transfer of Immune Modulating Properties and Idiotype Expression" J. of Immunology 148(9):2756–2763 (May 1992).

* cited by examiner

FIG. 1A

	10	20	30	40	50
4D5	DIVMTQSHKFMSTSV	GDRVSITCKAS	SQDVNTAVAWY	QQKPGHSPK	LLIYSASFRYT
					111
HU4D5	DIQMTQSPSSLSASV	GDRVTITCRAS	SQDVNTAVAWY	QQKPGKAPK	LLIYSASFLES
			1111		
HUVLKI	DIQMTQSPSSLSASV	GDRVTITCRAS	SQDVSSYLAW	YQQKPGKAPK	LLIYAASSLES
		(
			VL-CDR1		VL-CDR2
HUV _L ĸI	DIQMTQSPSSLSASV		SQDVSSYLAW		LLIYAASSLE

	60	70	80	90	100	
4D5	GVPDRFTG	NRSGTDFTFT	SSVQAEDLAV	YYCQQHYTT	PPTFGGGTKLI	EIKRA
HU4D5	GVPSRFSG	SRSGTDFTLT	ISSLQPEDFAT	YYCQQHYTT	PPTFGQGTKVI	EIKRT
HUVLKI	GVPSRFSG	SGSGTDFTLTI	SSLQPEDFAT	YYCQQYNSL	PYTFGQGTKVE	IKRT
				V _L -CD	R3	

896 of 1033

FIG. 1B

	10	20	30	40	50 A
4D5	EVQLQQSGPELVK	GASLKLSCTA	SGFNIKDTYI	HWVKQRPEQG	LEWIGRIYPTN
HU4D5	EVQLVÉSGGGLVQF	GĠSLŔLSCĂA	SGFNIKDTYI	hwvrqapgkg 	LEWVARIYPTN
HUVHIII	EVQLVESGGGLVQP	GGSLRLSCAA	SGFTFSDYAM	SWVRQAPGKG	LEWVAVISENG
and the Walks of the					
			VH-CDR1		VH-CDR2

	60	70	80	ABC	90	100AB	C
4D5	GYTRYDPKFQ	DKATITADTS	SNTAYLO	VSRLTSE	DTAVYYCSI	RWGGDGFYAL	WYDYW
	11111	111 1	1	111 11			1
HU4D5	GYTRYADSVK	GRFTISADTS	KNTAYLQ	MNSLRAE	DTAVYYCSI	RWGGDGFYA	MDVW
						11 11111	
HUVHIII	SDTYYADSVK	GRFTISRDDSI	KNTLYLQ	MNSLRAE	DTAVYYCAF	RDRGGAVSYI	DVW
		-					

V_H-CDR3

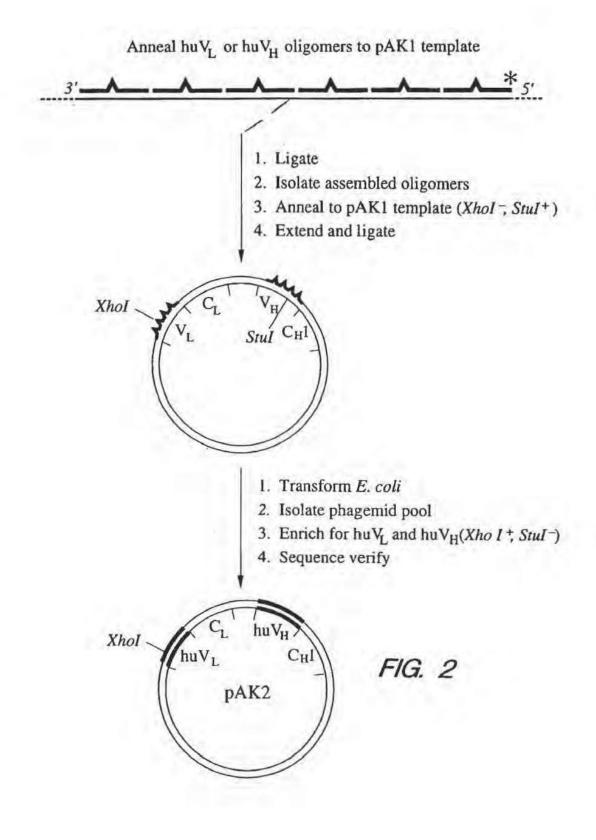
	110
4D5	GQGASVTVSS
HU4D5	GQGTLVTVSS
HUVHIII	GQGTLVTVSS

US 6,407,213 B1

U.S. Patent

Jun. 18, 2002

Sheet 2 of 9



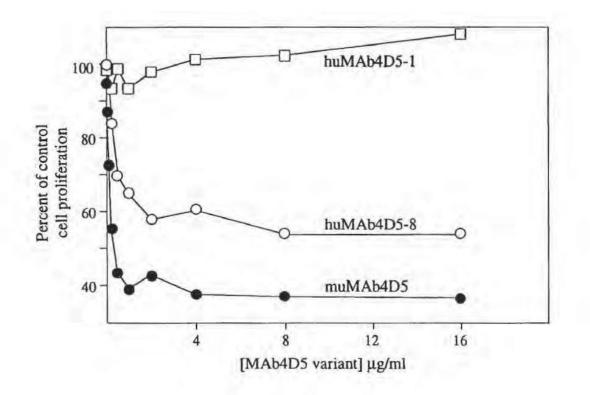


FIG. 3

US 6,407,213 B1

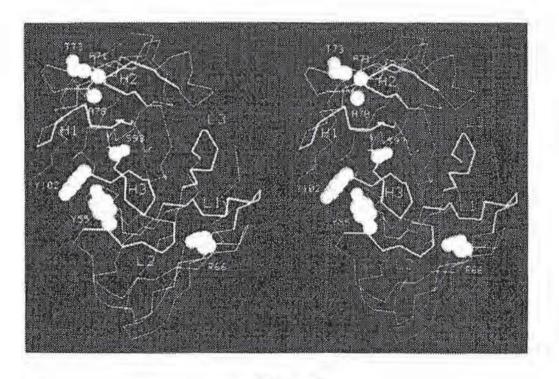


FIG. 4

VL10203040muxCD3DIQMTQTTSSLSASLGDRVTISCRASQDİRNYLNWYQQKPhuxCD3v1DIQMTQSPSSLSASVGDRVTITCRASQDIRNYLNWYQQKPhuxIDIQMTQSPSSLSASVGDRVTITCRASQŠIŠNYLÄWYQQKP6ĈDR-LÎ

50 60 70 80 muxCD3 DGTVKLLİŸYİSRLHSGVPSKFSGSGSGTDYSLTISNLEQ huxCD3v1 GKAPKLLIYYTSRLESGVPSRFSGSGSGTDYTLTISSLQP huxI GKAPKLLIY<u>ÄASSLES</u>GVPSRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLQP ĈDR-L2

	90 100
muxCD3	EDIATYFCQQĠŇŤĹ₽ŴTFAGGTKLEIK
huxCD3v1	EDFATYYCQQGNTLPWTFGQGTKVEIK
hukI	EDFATYYC <u>QQYNSLPWT</u> FGQGTKVEIK
	CDR-L3

VH	10	20	30	40
muxCD3	EVQLQQSGPELVKE	GASMKISCK	ASGYSFTGYTM	NWVKQS
huxCD3v1	EVQLVESGGGLVQE	PGGSLRLSCA	ASGYSFTGYTM	NWVRQA
huIII	EVQLVESGGGLVQE	GGSLRLSCA	ASGFTFS <u>SYAM</u>	SWVRQA
			CÔR-H1	

	50
muxCD3	HGKNLEWMGLINPYKGVŠTYNQKFKDKATLTVDKSSSTAY
huxCD3v1	PGKGLEWVALINPYKGVTTYADSVKGRFTISVDKSKNTAY
HUIII	PGKGLEWVS <u>VISGDGGSTYYADSVKG</u> RFTISRDNSKNTLY
	CDR-H2

	80 abc	90		bcde	110
muxCD3	MELLSLT	SEDSAVYYCA	RŠĠŸŸĠĎŚ	DWYFDVW	GAGTTVTVSS
huxCD3v1	LQMNSLR	AEDTAVYYCA	RSGYYGDS #######		GQGTLVTVSS
huIII	LQMNSLR	AEDTAVYYCA	RGRVGYSI D E T	SGLYDYW	GQGTLVTVSS
				-Ĥ3	

FIG. 5

H52H4-160	FIG.	6A-		LQQSGPELVKP		SGYTFTE
	VOLICOTT	-		* .** **.*		
pH52-8.0	MGWSCII	LFLVATA	TGVHSEVQI	LVESGGGLVQP	GGSLRLSCAT	SGITTLE
		10	20	30	40	50
		40	50	60	70	80
H52H4-160				KNGGSSHNQRF		
132114 100				****.*****		
pH52-8.0				KNGGTSHNQRF		
prove and				80		
	1. m	90	100	110	120	130
H52H4-160				GFDVRYFDVW		
	** .	****	*****	*******	* ** *****	*******
pH52-8.0	QMNSLRA	EDTAVYY	CARWRGLNY	GFDVRYFDVW	GQGTLVTVSS	SASTKGPS
		110	120	130	140	150
	1	40	150	160	170	180
H52H4-160				KDYFPEPVTVS		

pH52-8.0	the second second second second second second second second second second second second second second second se			KDYFPEPVTVS		The second second second second second second second second second second second second second second second se
		160	170	180	190	200
		0.0	200	210	220	220
H52H4-160				210		
n52n4-100				CYICNVNHKPS		
pH52-8.0				TYTCNVDHKPS		
ph32-0.0				230		unce v
			220	230	240	
	2	40	250	260	270	280
H52H4-160				PKDTLMISRTP		

pH52-8.0				PKDTLMISRTP		
				70 28		
				2.0	2 M 1 2 2 3	(B)

U.S. Patent

Jun. 18, 2002

BI Exhibit 1002

FIG. 6A-2

	290	300	310	320	330
H52H4-160				VLTVLHQDWL	
pH52-8.0				VLTVVHQDWL 330	
	340	350	360	370	380
H52H4-160				REEMTKNQVS	
pH52-8.0	NKGLPAPIE 350	KTISKTKGQPI 360	I wanted the second second second second second second second second second second second second second second	REEMTKNQVS 380	LTCLVKGFYP 390
100 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 100			410		430
H52H4-160				FLYSKLTVDK	
pH52-8.0	SDIAVEWES 400	NGQPENNYKTT 410	CPPMLDSDGSF 420	FLYSKLTVDK 430	SRWQQGNVFS 440
	440	450			
H52H4-160		NHYTQKSLSLS			
pH52-8.0	CSVMHEALH 450	NHYTQKSLSLS 460	SPGK		

FIG. 6B

			10	20	30
H52L6-158		DVQM	TQTTSSLSAS	LGDRVTINCR	ASQDINN
		* . * *	***. *****	****** **	******
pH52-9.0	MGWSCIILFLVAT	ATGVHSDIQM	TQSPSSLSAS	VGDRVTITCR	ASQDINN
	10	20	30	40	50
	40	50	60	70	80
H52L6-158	YLNWYQQKPNGTVI		HSGVPSRFSG ******		
pH52-9.0	YLNWYQQKPGKAPI	KLLIYYTSTL	HSGVPSRFSG	SGSGTDYTLT	ISSLQPE
	60	70	80	90	100
	90	100	110	120	130
H52L6-158	DIATYFCQQGNTLI *.***.******				
pH52-9.0	DFATYYCQQGNTLI				
ph52-9.0		120		140	150
	110	120	130	140	150
	140	150	160	170	180
H52L6-158	VVCLLNNFYPREAD	(VQWKVDNAL	QSGNSQESVT ******	EQDSKDSTYS ********	LSSTLTL ******
pH52-9.0	VVCLLNNFYPREAM	VOWKVDNAL	OSGNSOESVT	EODSKDSTYS	LSSTLTL
	160		180	190	200
	190	200	210		1.0
H52L6-158	SKADYEKHKVYAC	EVTHQGLSSE	and the second second second second second second second second second second second second second second second		
pH52-9.0	SKADYEKHKVYAC		the second second second second second		
P.105 210	210	220	230		

U.S. Patent

10

15

METHOD FOR MAKING HUMANIZED ANTIBODIES

CROSS REFERENCES

This application is a continuation-in-part of U.S. application Ser. No. 07/715,272 filed Jun. 14, 1991 (abandoned) which application is incorporated herein by reference and to which application priority is claimed under 35 USC §120.

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

This invention relates to methods for the preparation and use of variant antibodies and finds application particularly in the fields of immunology and cancer diagnosis and therapy.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Naturally occurring antibodies (immunoglobulins) comprise two heavy chains linked together by disulfide bonds and two light chains, one light chain being linked to each of 20 the heavy chains by disulfide bonds. Each heavy chain has at one end a variable domain (V_H) followed by a number of constant domains. Each light chain has a variable domain (V_L) at one end and a constant domain at its other end, the constant domain of the light chain is aligned with the first constant domain of the heavy chain, and the light chain variable domain is aligned with the variable domain of the heavy chain. Particular amino acid residues are believed to form an interface between the light and heavy chain variable domains, see e.g. Chothia et al., J. Mol. Biol. 186:651-663 30 (1985); Novotny and Haber, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 82:4592-4596 (1985).

The constant domains are not involved directly in binding the antibody to an antigen, but are involved in various effector functions, such as participation of the antibody in 35 antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity. The variable domains of each pair of light and heavy chains are involved directly in binding the antibody to the antigen. The domains of natural light and heavy chains have the same general structure, and each domain comprises four framework (FR) 40 regions, whose sequences are somewhat conserved, connected by three hyper-variable or complementarity determining regions (CDRs) (see Kabat, E. A. et a., Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, Md., (1987)). The four framework regions 45 largely adopt a β-sheet conformation and the CORs form loops connecting, and in some cases forming part of, the β-sheet structure. The CDRs in each chain are held in close proximity by the framework regions and, with the CDRs from the other chain, contribute to the formation of the 50 antigen binding site.

Widespread use has been made of monoclonal antibodies, particularly those derived from rodents including mice, however they are frequently antigenic in human clinical use. For example, a major limitation in the clinical use of rodent 55 monoclonal antibodies is an anti-globulin response during therapy (Miller, R. A. et al., *Blood* 62:988–995 (1983); Schroff, R. W. et al., *Cancer Res.* 45:879–885 (1985)).

The art has attempted to overcome this problem by constructing "chimeric" antibodies in which an animal 60 antigen-binding variable domain is coupled to a human constant domain (Cabilly et al., U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567; Morrison, S. L. et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 81:6851-6855 (1984); Boulianne, G. L. et al., *Nature* 312:643-646 (1984); Neuberger, M. S. et al., *Nature* 314:268-270 (1985)). The term "chimeric" antibody is used herein to describe a polypeptide comprising at least the

antigen binding portion of an antibody molecule linked to at least part of another protein (typically an immunoglobulin constant domain).

The isotype of the human constant domain may be selected to tailor the chimeric antibody for participation in antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) and complement-dependent cytotoxicity (see e.g. Bruggemann, M. et al., J. Exp. Med. 166:1351-1361 (1987); Riechmann, L. et al., Nature 332:323-327 (1988); Love et al., Methods in Enzymology 178:515-527 (1989); Bindon et al., J. Exp. Med. 168:127-142 (1988).

In the typical embodiment, such chimeric antibodies contain about one third rodent (or other non-human species) sequence and thus are capable of eliciting a significant anti-globulin response in humans. For example, in the case of the murine anti-CD3 antibody, OKT3, much of the resulting anti-globulin response is directed against the variable region rather than the constant region (Jaffers, G. J. et a., Transplantation 41:572–578 (1986)).

In a further effort to resolve the antigen binding functions of antibodies and to minimize the use of heterologous sequences in human antibodies, Winter and colleagues (Jones, P. T. et al., Nature 321:522–525 (1986); Riechmann, L. et al., Nature 332:323–327 (1988); Verboeyen, M. et al., Science 239:1534–1536 (1988)) have substituted rodent CDRs or CDR sequences for the corresponding segments of a human antibody. As used herein, the term "humanized" antibody is an embodiment of chimeric antibodies wherein substantially less than an intact human variable domain has been substituted by the corresponding sequence from a non-human species. In practice, humanized antibodies are typically human antibodies in which some CDR residues and possibly some FR residues are substituted by residues from analogous sites in rodent antibodies.

The therapeutic promise of this approach is supported by the clinical efficacy of a humanized antibody specific for the CAMPATH-1 antigen with two non-Hodgkin lymphoma patients, one of whom had previously developed an antiglobulin response to the parental rat antibody (Riechmann, L. et al., Nature 332:323-327 (1988); Hale, G. et al., Lancet i:1394-1399 (1988)). A murine antibody to the interleukin 2 receptor has also recently been humanized (Queen, C. et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 86:10029-10033 (1989)) as a potential immunosuppressive reagent. Additional references related to humanization of antibodies include Co et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 88:2869-2873 (1991); Gorman et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 88:4181-4185 (1991); Daugherty et al., Nucleic Acids Research 19(9):2471-2476 (1991); Brown et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 88:2663-2667 (1991); Junghans et al., Cancer Research 50:1495-1502 (1990).

In some cases, substituting CDRs from rodent antibodies for the human CDRs in human frameworks is sufficient to transfer high antigen binding affinity (Jones, P. T. et al., *Nature* 321:522–525 (1986); Verboeyen, M. et al., *Science* 239:1534–1536 (1988)), whereas in other cases it has been necessary to additionally replace one (Riechmann, L. et al., *Nature* 332:323–327 (1988)) or several (Queen, C. et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 86:10029–10033 (1989)) framework region (FR) residues. See also Co et al., supra.

For a given antibody a small number of FR residues are anticipated to be important for antigen binding. Firstly for example, certain antibodies have been shown to contain a few FR residues which directly contact antigen in crystal structures of antibody-antigen complexes (e.g., reviewed in Davies, D. R. et al., Ann. Rev. Biochem. 59:439–473 (1990)). Secondly, a number of FR residues have been proposed by Chothia, Lesk and colleagues (Chothia, C. & Lesk, A. M., J. Mol. Biol. 196:901-917 (1987); Chothia, C. et al., Nature 342:877-883 (1989); Tramontano, A. et al., J. Mol. Biol. 215:175-182 (1990)) as critically affecting the conformation 5 of particular CDRs and thus their contribution to antigen binding. See also Margolies et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 72:2180-2184 (1975).

It is also known that, in a few instances, an antibody variable domain (either V_{PI} or V_L) may contain glycosylation sites, and that this glycosylation may improve or abolish antigen binding, Pluckthun, *Biotechnology* 9:545-51 (1991); Spiegelberg et al., *Biotechnology* 9:54217-4223 (1970); Wallic et al., *J. Exp. Med.* 168:1099-1109 (1988); Sox et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 66:975-982 (1970); 15 Margni et al., *Ann. Rev. Immunol* 6:535-554 (1988). Ordinarily, however, glycosylation has no influence on the antigen-binding properties of an antibody, Pluckthun, supra, (1991).

The three-dimensional structure of immunoglobulin 20 chains has been studied, and crystal structures for intact immunoglobulins, for a variety of immunoglobulin fragments, and for antibody-antigen complexes have been published (see e.g., Saul et al., Journal of Biological Chemistry 25:585-97 (1978); Sheriff et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 25 USA 84:8075-79 (1987); Segal et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 71:4298-4302 (1974); Epp et al., Biochemistry 14(22) :4943-4952 (1975); Marquart et al., J. Mol. Biol. 141:369-391 (1980); Furey et al., J. Mol. Biol. 167:661-692 (1983); Snow and Amzel, Protein: Structure, Function, and 30 Genetics 1:267-279, Alan R. Liss, Inc. pubs. (1986); Chothia and Lesk, J. Mol. Bol. 196:901-917 (1987); Chothia et al., Nature 342:877-883 (1989); Chothia et al., Science 233:755-58 (1986); Huber et al., Nature 264:415-420 (1976); Bruccoleri et al., Nature 335:564-568 (1988) and ac Nature 336:266 (1988); Sherman et al., Journal of Biological Chemistry 263:4064-4074 (1988); Amzel and Poljak, Ann. Rev. Biochem. 48:961-67 (1979); Silverton et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 74:5140-5144 (1977); and Gregory et al., Molecular Immunology 24:821-829 (1987). It is known 40 that the function of an antibody is dependent on its three dimensional structure, and that amino acid substitutions can change the three-dimensional structure of an antibody, Snow and Amzel, supra. It has previously been shown that the antigen binding affinity of a humanized antibody can be 45 increased by mutagenesis based upon molecular modelling (Riechmann, L. et al., Nature 332:323-327 (1988); Queen, C. et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 86:10029-10033 (1989)).

Humanizing an antibody with retention of high affinity for 50 antigen and other desired biological activities is at present difficult to achieve using currently available procedures. Methods are needed for rationalizing the selection of sites for substitution in preparing such antibodies and thereby increasing the efficiency of antibody humanization. 55

The proto-oncogene HER2 (human epidermal growth factor receptor 2) encodes a protein tyrosine kinase (p185^{HER2}) that is related to and somewhat homologous to the human epidermal growth factor receptor (see Coussens, L. et al., *Science* 230:1132–1139 (1985); Yamamoto, T. et 60 al., *Nature* 319:230–234 (1986); King, C. R. et al., *Science* 229:974–976 (1985)). HER2 is also known in the field as c-erbB-2, and sometimes by the name of the rat homolog, neu. Amplification and/or overexpression of HER2 is associated with multiple human malignancies and appears to be 6s integrally involved in progression of 25–30% of human breast and ovarian cancers (Slamon, D. J. et al., *Science*

235:177-182 (1987), Slamon, D. J. et al., Science 244:707-712 (1989)). Furthermore, the extent of amplification is inversely correlated with the observed median patient survival time (Slamon, supra, Science 1989).

The murine monoclonal antibody known as muMAb4D5 (Fendly, B. M. et al., Cancer Res. 50:1550-1558 (1990)), directed against the extracellular domain (ECD) of p185^{HER2}, specifically inhibits the growth of tumor cell lines overexpressing p185^{HER2} in monolayer culture or in soft agar (Hudziak, R. M. et al., Molec. Cell. Biol 9:1165-1172 (1989); Lupu, R. et al., Science 249:1552-1555 (1990)). MuMAb4D5 also has the potential of enhancing tumor cell sensitivity to tumor necrosis factor, an important effector molecule in macrophage-mediated tumor cell cytotoxicity (Hudziak, supra, 1989; Shepard, H. M. and Lewis, G. D. J. Clinical Immunology 8:333-395 (1988)). Thus muMAb4D5 has potential for clinical intervention in and imaging of carcinomas in which p185^{HER2} is overexpressed. The muMAb4D5 and its uses are described in PCT application WO 89/06692 published Jul. 27, 1989. This murine antibody was deposited with the ATCC and designated ATCC CRL 10463. However, this antibody may be immunogenic in humans.

It is therefore an object of this invention to provide methods for the preparation of antibodies which are less antigenic in humans than non-human antibodies but have desired antigen binding and other characteristics and activities.

It is a further object of this invention to provide methods for the efficient humanization is of antibodies, i.e. selecting non-human amino acid residues for importation into a human antibody background sequence in such a fashion as to retain or improve the affinity of the non-human donor antibody for a given antigen.

It is another object of this invention to provide humanized antibodies capable of binding p185^{HER2}.

Other objects, features, and characteristics of the present invention will become apparent upon consideration of the following description and the appended claims.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The objects of this invention are accomplished by a method for making a humanized antibody comprising amino acid sequence of an import, non-human antibody and a human antibody, comprising the steps of:

- a. obtaining the amino acid sequences of at least a portion of an import antibody variable domain and of a consensus variable domain;
- b. identifying Complementarity Determining Region (CDR) amino acid sequences in the import and the human variable domain sequences;
- c. substituting an import CDR amino acid sequence for the corresponding human CDR amino acid sequence;
- aligning the amino acid sequences of a Framework Region (FR) of the import antibody and the corresponding FR of the consensus antibody;
- identifying import antibody FR residues in the aligned FR sequences that are non-homologous to the corresponding consensus antibody residues;
- f. determining if the non-homologous import amino acid residue is reasonably expected to have at least one of the following effects:
 - 1. non-covalently binds antigen directly,
 - 2. interacts with a CDR; or
- 3. participates in the $V_L V_H$ interface; and

10

g. for any non-homologous import antibody amino acid residue which is reasonably expected to have at least one of these effects, substituting that residue for the corresponding amino acid residue in the consensus antibody FR sequence.

Optionally, the method of this invention comprises the additional steps of determining if any non-homologous residues identified in step (e) are exposed on the surface of the domain or buried within it, and if the residue is exposed but has none of the effects identified in step (f), retaining the consensus residue.

Additionally, in certain embodiments the method of this invention comprises the feature wherein the corresponding consensus antibody residues identified in step (e) above are selected from the group consisting of 4L, 35L, 36L, 38L, 43L, 44L, 46L, 58L, 62L, 63L, 64L, 65L, 66L, 67L, 68L, ¹⁵ 69L, 70L, 71 L, 73L, 85L, 87L, 98L, 2H, 4H, 24H, 36H, 37H, 39H, 43H, 45H, 49H, 58H, 60H, 67H, 68H, 69H, 70H, 73H, 74H, 75H, 76H, 78H, 91H, 92H, 93H, and 103H (utilizing the numbering system set forth in Kabat, E. A. et al., Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest 20 (National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, Md., 1987)).

In certain embodiments, the method of this invention comprises the additional steps of searching either or both of the import, non-human and the consensus variable domain sequences for glycosylation sites, determining if the glyco- 25 sylation is reasonably expected to be important for the desired antigen binding and biological activity of the antibody (i.e., determining if the glycosylation site binds to antigen or changes a side chain of an amino acid residue that binds to antigen, or if the glycosylation enhances or weakens 30 antigen binding, or is important for maintaining antibody affinity). If the import sequence bears the glycosylation site, it is preferred to substitute that site for the corresponding residues in the consensus human if the glycosylation site is reasonably expected to be important. If only the consensus 35 sequence, and not the import, bears the glycosylation site, it is preferred to eliminate that glycosylation site or substitute therefor the corresponding amino acid residues from the import sequence.

Another embodiment of this invention comprises aligning 40 import antibody and the consensus antibody FR sequences, identifying import antibody FR residues which are non-homologous with the aligned consensus FR sequence, and for each such non-homologous import antibody FR residue, determining if the corresponding consensus antibody residue represents a residue which is highly conserved across all species at that site, and if it is so conserved, preparing a humanized antibody which comprises the consensus antibody amino acid residue at that site.

Certain alternate embodiments of the methods of this 50 invention comprise obtaining the amino acid sequence of at least a portion of an import, non-human antibody variable domain having a CDR and a FR, obtaining the amino acid sequence of at least a portion of a consensus antibody variable domain having a CDR and a FR, substituting the 55 non-human CDR for the human CDR in the consensus antibody variable domain, and then substituting an amino acid residue for the consensus amino acid residue at at least one of the following sites:

- a. (in the FR of the variable domain of the light chain) 4L, 60 35L, 36L, 38L, 43L, 44L, 58L, 46L, 62L, 63L, 64L, 65L, 66L, 67L, 68L, 69L, 70L, 71L, 73L, 85L, 87L, 98L, or
- b. (in the FR of the variable domain of the heavy chain)
 2H, 4H, 24H, 36H, 37H, 39H, 43H, 45H, 49H, 58H, 65
 60H, 67H, 68H, 69H, 70H, 73H, 74H, 75H, 78H, 91H, 92H, 93H, and 103H.

In preferred embodiments, the non-CDR residue substituted at the consensus FR site is the residue found at the corresponding location of the non-human antibody.

Optionally, this just-recited embodiment comprises the additional steps of following the method steps appearing at the beginning of this summary and determining whether a particular amino acid residue can reasonably be expected to have undesirable effects.

This invention also relates to a humanized antibody comprising the CDR sequence of an import, non-human antibody and the FR sequence of a human antibody, wherein an amino acid residue within the human FR sequence located at any one of the sites 4L, 35L, 36L, 38L, 43L, 44L, 46L, 58L, 62L, 63L, 64L, 65L, 66L, 67L, 68L, 69L, 70L, 2H, 4H, 24H, 36H, 37H, 39H, 43H, 45H, 49H, 58H, 60H, 67H, 68H, 69H, 70H, 73H, 74H, 75H, 76H, 78H, 91H, 92H, 93H, and 103H has been substituted by another residue. In preferred embodiments, the residue substituted at the human FR site is the residue found at the corresponding location of the non-human antibody from which the non-human CDR was obtained. In other embodiments, no human FR residue other than those set forth in this group has been substituted.

This invention also encompasses specific humanized antibody variable domains, and isolated polypeptides having homology with the following sequences.

- 1. SEQ. ID NO. 1, which is the light chain variable domain of a humanized version of muMAb4D5: DIQMTOSPSSLSASVGDRVTITCRASQD-VNTAVAWYQQKPGKAPKLLIYSASFLES-GVPSRFSGSRSGTDFTLTISSLQPEDFA-TYYCQQHYTTPPTFGQGTKVEIKRT
- 2. SEQ. ID NO. 2, which is the heavy chain variable domain of a humanized version of muMAb4D5): EVQLVESGGGLVOPGGSLRLSCAASGFNIK DTYIHWVRQAPGKGLEWVARIYPTNGYTRY ADSVKGRFTISADTSKNTAYLQMNSLRAED TAVYYCSRWGGDGFYAMDVWGQGTLVTVSS

In another aspect, this invention provides a consensus antibody variable domain amino acid sequence for use in the preparation of humanized antibodies, methods for obtaining, using, and storing a computer representation of such a consensus sequence, and computers comprising the sequence data of such a sequence. In one embodiment, the following consensus antibody variable domain amino acid sequences are provided:

SEQ. ID NO. 3 (light chain): DDIOMTQSPSSLSAS-VGDRVTITCRASQDVSSYLAWYQQKPGKAPKLL IYAASSLESGVPSRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLQP EDFATYYCQQYNSLPYTFGQGTKVEIKRT, and

SEQ. ID NO. 4 (beavy chain): EVQLVESGGGLVQPG GSLRLSCAASGFTFSDYAMSWVRQAPGKGL EWVAVISENGGYTRYADSVKGRFTISADTSKNT AYLQMNSLRAEDTAWYCSRWGGDGFYAMD VWGQGTLVTVSS

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIG. 1A shows the comparison of the V_L domain amino acid residues of muMAb4D5, huMAb4D5, and a consensus sequence (FIG. 1A, SEQ.ID NO. 5, SEQ. ID NO. 1 and SEQ. ID NO. 3, respectively). FIG. 1B shows the comparison between the V_H domain amino acid residues of the muMAb4D5, huMAb4D5, and a consensus sequence (FIG. 1B, SEQ. ID NO. 6, SEQ. ID NO. 2 and SEQ. ID NO. 4, respectively). Both FIGS. 1A and 1B use the generally accepted numbering scheme from Kabat, E. A., et al., Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest (National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, Md. (1987)). In both FIG. 1A and FIG. 1B, the CDR residues determined according to a standard sequence definition (as in Kabat, E. A. et al., *Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest* (National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, Md., 1987)) are indicated by the first underlining beneath the sequences, and the CDR residues determined according to a structural definition (as in Chothia, C. & Lesk, A. M., J. Mol. Biol. 196:901-917 (1987)) are indicated by the second, lower underlines. The mismatches between genes are shown by the vertical lines.

FIG. 2 shows a scheme for humanization of muMAb4D5 V_L and V_H by gene conversion mutagenesis.

FIG. 3 shows the inhibition of SK-BR-3 proliferation by MAb4D5 variants. Relative cell proliferation was determined as described (Hudziak, R. M. et al., *Molec. Cell. Biol.* 9:1165-1172 (1989)) and data (average of triplicate determinations) are presented as a percentage of results with untreated cultures for muMAb4D5 (•), huMAb4D5-8 (○) and huMAb4D5-1 (□).

FIG. 4 shows a stereo view of α -carbon tracing for a model of huMAb4D5-8 V_L and V_H . The CDR residues (Kabat, E. A. et al., Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest (National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, Md., ²⁰ 1987)) are shown in bold and side chains of V_H residues A71, T73, A78, S93, Y102 and V_L residues Y55 plus R66 (see Table 3) are shown.

FIG. 5 shows an amino acid sequence comparison of V_L (top panel) and V_H (lower panel) domains of the murine 25 anti-CD3 monoclonal Ab UCHT1 (muxCD3, Shalaby et al., J. Exp. Med. 175, 217-225 (1992) with a humanized variant of this antibody (huxCD3v1). Also shown are consensus sequences (most commonly occurring residue or pair of residues) of the most abundant human subgroups, namely $V_L \kappa 1$ and V_H III upon which the humanized sequences are 30 based (Kabat, E. A. et al., Sequences of Proteins of immu-nological Interest, 5th edition, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, Md., USA (1991)). The light chain sequencesmuxCD3, huxCD3v1 and huKI-correspond to SEQ.ID. NOs 16, 17, and 18, respectively. The heavy chain sequences-muxCD3, huxCD3v1 and huxl-correspond to SEQ.ID.NOs 19, 26, and 21, respectively. Residues which differ between muxCD3 and huxCD3v1 are identified by an asterisk (*), whereas those which differ between humanized and consensus sequences are identified by a sharp sign (#). A bullet (•) denotes that a residue at this position has been 40 found to contact antigen in one or more crystallographic structures of antibody/antigen complexes (Kabat et al., 1991; Mian, I. S. et al., J. Mol. Biol 217, 133-151 (1991)). The location of CDR residues according to a sequence definition (Kabat et al., 1991) and a structural definition 45 (Chothia and Lesk, supra 1987) are shown by a line and carats (") beneath the sequences, respectively.

FIG. 6A compares murine and humanized amino acid sequences for the heavy chain of an anti-CD18 antibody. H52H4-160 (SEQ. ID. NO. 22) is the murine sequence, and pH52-8.0 (SEQ. ID. NO. 23) is the humanized heavy chain sequence. pH52-8.0 residue 143S is the final amino acid in the variable heavy chain domain V_{μ} and residue 144A is the first amino acid in the constant heavy chain domain $C_{\mu1}$.

FIG. 6B compares murine and humanized amino acid sequences for the light chain of an anti-CD18 antibody. ⁵⁵ H52L6-158 (SEQ. ID. NO. 24) is the murine sequence, and pH52-9.0 (SEQ. ID. NO. 25) is the humanized light chain sequence. pH52-9.0 residue 128T is the final amino acid in the light chain variable domain V_L , and residue 129V is the first amino acid in the light chain constant domain C_L . ⁶⁰

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

Definitions

In general, the following words or phrases have the 65 indicated definitions when used in the description, examples, and claims:

The murine monoclonal antibody known as muMAb4D5 (Fendly, B. M. et al., *Cancer Res.* 50:1550–1558 (1990)) is directed against the extracellular domain (ECD) of p185^{HER2}. The muMAb4D5 and its uses are described in PCT application WO 89/06692 published Jul. 27, 1989. This murine antibody was deposited with the ATCC and designated ATCC CRL 10463. In this description and claims, the terms muMAb4D5, chMAb4D5 and huMAb4D5 represent murine, chimerized and humanized versions of the monoclonal antibody 4D5, respectively.

A humanized antibody for the purposes herein is an immunoglobulin amino acid sequence variant or fragment thereof which is capable of binding to a predetermined antigen and which comprises a FR region having substantially the amino acid sequence of a human immunoglobulin and a CDR having substantially the amino acid sequence of a non-human immunoglobulin.

Generally, a humanized antibody has one or more amino acid residues introduced into it from a source which is non-human. These non-human amino acid residues are referred to herein as "import" residues, which are typically taken from an "import" antibody domain, particularly a variable domain. An import residue, sequence, or antibody has a desired affinity and/or specificity, or other desirable antibody biological activity as discussed herein.

In general, the humanized antibody will comprise substantially all of at least one, and typically two, variable domains (Fab, Fab', $F(ab')_2$, Fabc, Fv) in which all or substantially all of the CDR regions correspond to those of a non-human immunoglobulin and all or substantially all of the FR regions are those of a human immunoglobulin consensus sequence. The humanized antibody optimally also will comprise at least a portion of an immunoglobulin constant region (Fc), typically that of a human immunoglobulin. Ordinarily, the antibody will contain both the light chain as well as at least the variable domain of a heavy chain. The antibody also may include the CH1, hinge, CH2, CH3, and CH4 regions of the heavy chain.

The humanized antibody will be selected from any class of immunoglobulins, including IgM, IgG, IgD, IgA and IgE, and any isotype, including IgG1, IgG2, IgG3 and IgG4. Usually the constant domain is a complement fixing constant domain where it is desired that the humanized antibody exhibit cytotoxic activity, and the class is typically IgG₁. Where such cytotoxic activity is not desirable, the constant domain may be of the IgG₂ class. The humanized antibody may comprise sequences from more than one class or isotype, and selecting particular constant domains to optimize desired effector functions is within the ordinary skill in the art.

The FR and CDR regions of the humanized antibody need not correspond precisely to the parental sequences, e.g., the import CDR or the consensus FR may be mutagenized by substitution, insertion or deletion of at least one residue so that the CDR or FR residue at that site does not correspond to either the consensus or the import antibody. Such mutations, however, will not be extensive. Usually, at least 75% of the humanized antibody residues will correspond to those of the parental FR and CDR sequences, more often 90%, and most preferably greater than 95%.

In general, humanized antibodies prepared by the method of this invention are produced by a process of analysis of the parental sequences and various conceptual humanized products using three dimensional models of the parental and humanized sequences. Three dimensional immunoglobulin models are commonly available and are familiar to those skilled in the art. Computer programs are available which illustrate and display probable three dimensional conformational structures of selected candidate immunoglobulin sequences. Inspection of these displays permits analysis of the likely role of the residues in the functioning of the 5 candidate immunoglobulin sequence, i.e., the analysis of residues that influence the ability of the candidate immunoglobulin to bind its antigen.

Residues that influence antigen binding are defined to be residues that are substantially responsible for the antigen 10 affinity or antigen specificity of a candidate immunoglobulin, in a positive or a negative sense. The invention is directed to the selection and combination of FR residues from the consensus and import sequence so that the desired immunoglobulin characteristic is achieved. Such 15 desired characteristics include increases in affinity and greater specificity for the target antigen, although it is conceivable that in some circumstances the opposite effects might be desired. In general, the CDR residues are directly and most substantially involved in influencing antigen bind- 20 ing (although not all CDR residues are so involved and therefore need not be substituted into the consensus sequence). However, FR residues also have a significant effect and can exert their influence in at least three ways: They may noncovalently directly bind to antigen, they may 25 interact with CDR residues and they may affect the interface between the heavy and light chains.

A residue that noncovalently directly binds to antigen is one that, by three dimensional analysis, is reasonably expected to noncovalently directly bind to antigen. 30 Typically, it is necessary to impute the position of antigen from the spatial location of neighboring CDRs and the dimensions and structure of the target antigen. In general, only those humanized antibody residues that are capable of forming salt bridges, hydrogen bonds, or hydrophobic inter- 35 actions are likely to be involved in non-covalent antigen binding, however residues which have atoms which are separated from antigen spatially by 3.2 Angstroms or less may also non-covalently interact with antigen. Such residues typically are the relatively larger amino acids having the side 40 chains with the greatest bulk, such as tyrosine, arginine, and lysine. Antigen-binding FR residues also typically will have side chains that are oriented into an envelope surrounding the solvent oriented face of a CDR which extends about 7 Angstroms into the solvent from the CDR domain and about 45 7 Angstroms on either side of the CDR domain, again as visualized by three dimensional modeling.

A residue that interacts with a CDR generally is a residue that either affects the conformation of the CDR polypeptide backbone or forms a noncovalent bond with a CDR residue 50 side chain. Conformation-affecting residues ordinarily are those that change the spatial position of any CDR backbone atom (N, Ca, C, O, C β) by more than about 0.2 Angstroms. Backbone atoms of CDR sequences are displaced for example by residues that interrupt or modify organized 55 structures such as beta sheets, helices or loops. Residues that can exert a profound affect on the conformation of neighboring sequences include proline and glycine, both of which are capable of introducing bends into the backbone. Other residues that can displace backbone atoms are those that are 60 capable of participating in salt bridges and hydrogen bonds.

A residue that interacts with a CDR side chain is one that is reasonably expected to form a noncovalent bond with a CDR side chain, generally either a salt bridge or hydrogen bond. Such residues are identified by three dimensional 65 positioning of their side chains. A salt or ion bridge could be expected to form between two side chains positioned within

about 2.5-3.2 Angstroms of one another that bear opposite charges, for example a lysinyl and a glutamyl pairing. A hydrogen bond could be expected to form between the side chains of residue pairs such as seryl or threonyl with aspartyl or glutamyl (or other hydrogen accepting residues). Such pairings are well known in the protein chemistry art and will be apparent to the artisan upon three dimensional modeling of the candidate immunoglobulin.

Immunoglobulin residues that affect the interface between heavy and light chain variable regions ("the $V_I - V_H$ interface") are those that affect the proximity or orientation of the two chains with respect to one another. Certain residues involved in interchain interactions are already known and include Vz residues 34, 36, 38, 44, 46, 87, 89, 91, 96, and 98 and V_H residues 35, 37, 39, 45, 47, 91, 93, 95, 100, and 103 (utilizing the nomenclature setforth in Kabat et al., Sequences of Proteins of immunological Interest (National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, Md., 1987)). Additional residues are newly identified by the inventors herein, and include 43L, 85L, 43H and 60H. While these residues are indicated for IgG only, they are applicable across species. In the practice of this invention, import antibody residues that are reasonably expected to be involved in interchain interactions are selected for substitution into the consensus sequence. It is believed that heretofore no humanized antibody has been prepared with an intrachain-affecting residue selected from an import antibody sequence.

Since it is not entirely possible to predict in advance what the exact impact of a given substitution will be it may be necessary to make the substitution and assay the candidate antibody for the desired characteristic. These steps, however, are per se routine and well within the ordinary skill of the art.

CDR and FR residues are determined according to a standard sequence definition (Kabat et al., Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda Md. (1987), and a structural definition (as in Chothia and Lesk, J. Mol. Biol. 196:901-917 (1987). Where these two methods result in slightly different identifications of a CDR, the structural definition is preferred, but the residues identified by the sequence definition method are considered important FR residues for determination of which framework residues to import into a consensus sequence.

Throughout this description, reference is made to the numbering scheme from Kabat, E. A., et al., Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest (National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, Md. (1987) and (1991). In these compendiums, Kabat lists many amino acid sequences for antibodies for each subclass, and lists the most commonly occurring amino acid for each residue position in that subclass. Kabat uses a method for assigning a residue number to each amino acid in a listed sequence, and this method for assigning residue numbers has become standard in the field. The Kabat numbering scheme is followed in this description.

For purposes of this invention, to assign residue numbers to a candidate antibody amino acid sequence which is not included in the Kabat compendium, one follows the following steps. Generally, the candidate sequence is aligned with any immunoglobulin sequence or any consensus sequence in Kabat. Alignment may be done by hand, or by computer using commonly accepted computer programs; an example of such a program is the Align 2 program discussed in this description. Alignment may be facilitated by using some amino acid residues which are common to most Fab

909 of 1033

35

sequences. For example, the light and heavy chains each typically have two cysteines which have the same residue numbers; in V_L domain the two cysteines are typically at residue numbers 23 and 88, and in the V_H domain the two cysteine residues are typically numbered 22 and 92. Frame- 5 work residues generally, but not always, have approximately the same number of residues, however the CDRs will vary in size. For example, in the case of a CDR from a candidate sequence which is longer than the CDR in the sequence in Kabat to which it is aligned, typically suffixes are added to 10 the residue number to indicate the insertion of additional residues (see, e.g. residues 100abcde in FIG. 5). For candidate sequences which, for example, align with a Kabat sequence for residues 34 and 36 but have no residue between them to align with residue 35, the number 35 is simply not 15 domains. assigned to a residue.

Thus, in humanization of an import variable sequence, where one cuts out an entire human or consensus CDR and replaces it with an import CDR sequence, (a) the exact number of residues may be swapped, leaving the numbering 20 the same, (b) fewer import amino acid residues may be introduced than are cut, in which case there will be a gap in the residue numbers, or (c) a larger number of amino acid residues may be introduced then were cut, in which case the 25 numbering will involve the use of suffixes such as 100abcde.

The terms "consensus sequence" and "consensus antibody" as used herein refers to an amino acid sequence which comprises the most frequently occurring amino acid residues at each location in all immunoglobulins of any particular 30 subclass or subunit structure. The consensus sequence may be based on immunoglobulins of a particular species or of many species. A "consensus" sequence, structure, or antibody is understood to encompass a consensus human sequence as described in certain embodiments of this invention, and to refer to an amino acid sequence which comprises the most frequently occurring amino acid residues at each location in all human immunoglobulins of any particular subclass or subunit structure. This invention provides consensus human structures and consensus structures 40 which consider other species in addition to human.

The subunit structures of the live immunoglobulin classes in humans are as follows:

Class	Heavy Chain	Subclasses	Light Chain	Molecular Formula
IgG	Y	y1, y2, y3, y4	κ οι λ	$(\gamma_{2}\kappa_{2}), (\gamma_{2}\lambda_{2})$
IgA	a	a1, a2	K or A	$(\alpha_{2}\kappa_{2})_{a}^{a}, (\alpha_{2}\lambda_{2})_{a}^{a}$
IgM	μ	none	κ or λ	(42K2)5, (4222)5
IgD	δ	none	κorλ	$(\delta_2 \kappa_2), (\delta_2 \lambda_2)$
IgE	E	none	κorλ	$(\varepsilon_2 \kappa_2), (\varepsilon_2 \lambda_2)$

(a may equal 1, 2, or 3)

In preferred embodiments of an IgGyl human consensus 55 sequence, the consensus variable domain sequences are derived from the most abundant subclasses in the sequence compilation of Kabat et al., Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda Md. (1987), namely $V_L \kappa$ subgroup I and V_H group III. In 60 such preferred embodiments, the VL consensus domain has the amino acid sequence:

the V_H consensus domain has the amino acid sequence: EVQLVESGGGLVQPGGSLRLSCAASGFTFSDYAMSW VRQAPGKGLEWVAVISENGGYTRYADSVKGRFT

ISADTSKNTAYLQMNSLRAEDTAVYYCSRWGGD GFYAMDVWGQGTLVTVSS (SEQ. ID NO. 4).

These sequences include consensus CDRs as well as consensus FR residues (see for example in FIG. 1).

While not wishing to be limited to any particular theories, it may be that these preferred embodiments are less likely to be immunogenic in an individual than less abundant subclasses. However, in other embodiments, the consensus sequence is derived from other subclasses of human immunoglobulin variable domains. In yet other embodiments, the consensus sequence is derived from human constant

Identity or homology with respect to a specified amino acid sequence of this invention is defined herein as the percentage of amino acid residues in a candidate sequence that are identical with the specified residues, after aligning the sequences and introducing gaps, if necessary, to achieve the maximum percent homology, and not considering any conservative substitutions as part of the sequence identity. None of N-terminal, C-terminal or internal extensions, deletions, or insertions into the specified sequence shall be construed as affecting homology. All sequence alignments called for in this invention are such maximal homology alignments. While such alignments may be done by hand using conventional methods, a suitable computer program is the "Align 2" program for which protection is being sought from the U.S. Register of Copyrights (Align 2, by Genentech, Inc., application filed Dec. 9, 1991)

"Non-homologous" import antibody residues are those residues which are not identical to the amino acid residue at the analogous or corresponding location in a consensus sequence, after the import and consensus sequences are aligned.

The term "computer representation" refers to information which is in a form that can be manipulated by a computer. The act of storing a computer representation refers to the act of placing the information in a form suitable for manipulation by a computer.

This invention is also directed to novel polypeptides, and in certain aspects, isolated novel humanized anti-p185HER2 antibodies are provided. These novel anti-p185^{HER2} antibodies are sometimes collectively referred to herein as huMAb4D5, and also sometimes as the light or heavy chain variable domains of huMAb4D5, and are defined herein to be any polypeptide sequence which possesses a biological property of a polypeptide comprising the following polypeptide sequence:

DIQMTQSPSSLSASVGDRVTITCRASODVNTAVAWY QQKPGKAPKLLIYSASFLESGVPSRFSGSRSGT DFTLTISSLQPEDFATYYCQQHYTTPPTFGQGTK VEIKRT (SEQ. ID NO. 1, which is the light chain variable domain of huMAb4D5); or

EVQLVESGGGLVOPGGSLRLSCAASGFNIKDTYIHW VRQAPGKGLEWVARIYPTNGYTRYADSVKGRFT **ISADTSKNTAYLQMNSLRAEDTAVYYCSRWGGD** GFYAMDVWGQGTLVTVSS (SEQ. ID NO. 2, which is the heavy chain variable domain of huMAb4D5).

"Biological property", as relates for example to antip185^{10ER2}, for the purposes herein means an in vivo effector or antigen-binding function or activity that is directly or indirectly performed by huMAb4D5 (whether in its native or denatured conformation). Effector functions include p185^{HER2} binding, any hormonal or hormonal antagonist activity, any mitogenic or agonist or antagonist activity, any

DIOMTOSPSSLSASVGDRVTITCRASOD-VSSYLAWYQQKPGKAPKLLIYAASSLES-GVPSRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLQPEDFA-65 TYYCQQYNSLPYTFGQGTKVEIKRT (SEQ. ID NO. 3);

cytotoxic activity. An antigenic function means possession of an epitope or antigenic site that is capable of crossreacting with antibodies raised against the polypeptide sequence of huMAb4D5.

Biologically active huMAb4D5 is defined herein as a 5 polypeptide that shares an effector function of huMAb4D5. A principal known effector function of huMAb4D5 is its ability to bind to p185^{MER2}.

Thus, the biologically active and antigenically active huMAb4D5 polypeptides that are the subject of certain 10 embodiments of this invention include the sequence of the entire translated nucleotide sequence of huMAb4D5; mature huMAb4D5; fragments thereof having a consecutive sequence of at least 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30 or 40 amino acid residues comprising sequences from muMAb4D5 plus residues from the human FR of huMAb4D5; amino acid 15 sequence variants of huMAb4D5 wherein an amino acid residue has been inserted N- or C-terminal to, or within, huMAb4D5 or its fragment as defined above; amino acid sequence variants of huMAb4D5 or its fragment as defined above wherein an amino acid residue of huMAb4D5 or its 20 fragment as defined above has been substituted by another residue, including predetermined mutations by, e.g., sitedirected or PCR mutagenesis; derivatives of huMAb4D5 or its fragments as defined above wherein huMAb4D5 or its fragments have been covalent modified, by substitution, 25 chemical, enzymatic, or other appropriate means, with a moiety other than a naturally occurring amino acid; and glycosylation variants of huMAb4D5 (insertion of a glycosylation site or deletion of any glycosylation site by deletion, insertion or substitution of suitable residues). Such frag- 30 ments and variants exclude any polypeptide heretofore identified, including muMAb4D5 or any known polypeptide fragment, which are anticipatory order 35 U.S.C. 102 as well as polypeptides obvious thereover under 35 U.S.C. 103.

An "isolated" polypeptide means polypeptide which has 35 been identified and separated and/or recovered from a component of its natural environment. Contaminant components of its natural environment are materials which would interfere with diagnostic or therapeutic uses for the polypeptide, and may include enzymes, hormones, and other proteinaceous or nonproteinaceous solutes. In preferred embodiments, for example, a polypeptide product comprising huMAb4D5 will be purified from a cell culture or other synthetic environment (1) to greater than 95% by weight of protein as determined by the Lowry method, and most 45 preferably more than 99% by weight, (2) to a degree sufficient to obtain at least 15 residues of N-terminal or internal amino acid sequence by use of a gas- or liquid-phase sequenator (such as a commercially available Applied Biosystems sequenator Model 470, 477, or 473), or (3) to 50 homogeneity by SDS-PAGE under reducing or nonreducing conditions using Coomassie blue or, preferably, silver stain. Isolated huMAb4D5 includes huMAb4D5 in situ within recombinant cells since at least one component of the huMAb4D5 natural environment will not be present. 55 and "transformed cells" include the primary subject cell and Ordinarily, however, isolated huMAb4D5 will be prepared by at least one purification step.

In accordance with this invention, huMAb4D5 nucleic acid is RNA or DNA containing greater than ten bases that encodes a biologically or antigenically active huMAb4D5, is 60 complementary to nucleic acid sequence encoding such huMAb4D5, or hybridizes to nucleic acid sequence encoding such huMAb4D5 and remains stably bound to it under stringent conditions, and comprises nucleic acid from a muMAb4D5 CDR and a human FR region.

Preferably, the huMAb4D5 nucleic acid encodes a polypeptide sharing at least 75% sequence identity, more preferably at least 80%, still more preferably at least 85%, even more preferably at 90%, and most preferably 95%, with the huMAb4D5 amino acid sequence. Preferably, a nucleic acid molecule that hybridizes to the huMAb4D5 nucleic acid contains at least 20, more preferably 40, and most preferably 90 bases. Such hybridizing or complementary nucleic acid, however, is further defined as being novel under 35 U.S.C. 102 and unobvious under 35 U.S.C. 103 over any prior art nucleic acid.

Stringent conditions are those that (1) employ low ionic strength and high temperature for washing, for example, 0.015 M NaCl/0.0015 M sodium citrate/0/1% NaDodSO4 at 50° C.; (2) employ during hybridization a denaturing agent such as formamide, for example, 50% (vol/vol) formamide with 0.1% bovine serumalbumin/0/1% Ficoll/0/1% polyvinylpyrrolidone/50 mM sodium phosphate buffer at pH 6.5 with 750 mM NaCl, 75 mM sodium citrate at 42° C.; or (3) employ 50% formamide, 5×SSC (0.75 M NaCl, 0.075 M sodium citrate), 50 mM sodium phosphate (pH 6.8), 0.1% sodium pyrophosphate, 5xDenhardt's solution, sonicated salmon sperm DNA (50 g/ml), 0.1% SDS, and 10% dextran sulfate at 42 C., with washes at 42 C. in 0.2×SSC and 0.1% SDS.

The term "control sequences" refers to DNA sequences necessary for the expression of an operably linked coding sequence in a particular host organism. The control sequences that are suitable for prokaryotes, for example, include a promoter, optionally an operator sequence, a ribosome binding site, and possibly, other as yet poorly understood sequences. Eukaryotic cells are known to utilize promoters, polyadenylation signals, and enhancers

Nucleic acid is "operably linked" when it is placed into a functional relationship with another nucleic acid sequence. For example, DNA for a presequence or secretory leader is operably linked to DNA for a polypeptide if it is expressed as a preprotein that participates in the secretion of the polypeptide; a promoter or enhancer is operably linked to a coding sequence if it affects the transcription of the sequence; or a ribosome binding site is operably linked to a coding sequence if it is positioned so as to facilitate translation. Generally, "operably linked" means that the DNA sequences being linked are contiguous and, in the case of a secretory leader, contiguous and in reading phase. However enhancers do not have to be contiguous. Linking is accomplished by ligation at convenient restriction sites. If such sites do not exist, then synthetic oligonucleotide adaptors or linkers are used in accord with conventional practice.

An "exogenous" element is defined herein to mean nucleic acid sequence that is foreign to the cell, or homologous to the cell but in a position within the host cell nucleic acid in which the element is ordinarily not found.

As used herein, the expressions "cell," "cell line," and "cell culture" are used interchangeably and all such designations include progeny. Thus, the words "transformants" cultures derived therefrom without regard for the number of transfers. It is also understood that all progeny may not be precisely identical in DNA content, due to deliberate or inadvertent mutations. Mutant progeny that have the same function or biological activity as screened for in the originally transformed cell are included. Where distinct designations are intended, it will be clear from the context.

"Oligonucleotides" are short-length, single- or doublestranded polydeoxynucleotides that are chemically synthe-65 sized by known methods (such as phosphotriester, phosphite, or phosphoramidite chemistry, using solid phase techniques such as described in EP 266,032 published May 1988, or via deoxynucleoside H-phosphonate intermediates as described by Froehler et al., *Nucl. Acids Res.*, 14: 5399-5407 [1986]). They are then purified on polyacrylamide gels.

The technique of "polymerase chain reaction," or "PCR," 5 as used herein generally refers to a procedure wherein minute amounts of a specific piece of nucleic acid, RNA and/or DNA, are amplified as described in U.S. Pat. No. 4,683,195 issued Jul. 28, 1987. Generally, sequence information from the ends of the region of interest or beyond needs to be available, such that oligonucleotide primers can 10 be designed; these primers will be identical or similar in sequence to opposite strands of the template to be amplified. The 5' terminal nucleotides of the two primers may coincide with the ends of the amplified material. PCR can be used to amplify specific RNA sequences, specific DNA sequences from total genomic DNA, and cDNA transcribed from total cellular RNA, bacteriophage or plasmid sequences, etc. See generally Mullis et al., Cold Spring Harbor Symp. Quant. Biol., 51: 263 (1987); Erlich, ed., PCR Technology, (Stockton Press, N.Y., 1989) As used herein, PCR is considered to be one, but not the only, example of a nucleic acid 20 polymerase reaction method for amplifying a nucleic acid test sample, comprising the use of a known nucleic acid (DNA or RNA) as a primer and utilizes a nucleic acid polymerase to amplify or generate a specific piece of nucleic acid or to amplify or generate a specific piece of nucleic acid 25 which is complementary to a particular nucleic acid.

Suitable Methods for Practicing the Invention

Some aspects of this invention include obtaining an import, non-human antibody variable domain, producing a 30 desired humanized antibody sequence and for humanizing an antibody gene sequence are described below. A particularly preferred method of changing a gene sequence, such as gene conversion from a non-human or consensus sequence into a humanized nucleic acid sequence, is the cassette mutagenesis procedure described in Example 1. ³⁵ Additionally, methods are given for obtaining and producing antibodies generally, which apply equally to native non-human antibodies as well as to humanized antibodies.

Generally, the antibodies and antibody variable domains of this invention are conventionally prepared in recombinant cell culture, as described in more detail below. Recombinant synthesis is preferred for reasons of safety and economy, but it is known to prepare peptides by chemical synthesis and to purify them from natural sources; such preparations are included within the definition of antibodies herein.

Molecular Modeling

An integral step in our approach to antibody humanization is construction of computer graphics models of the import and humanized antibodies. These models are used to determine if the six complementarity-determining regions (CDRs) can be successfully transplanted from the import framework to a human one and to determine which framework residues from the import antibody, if any, need to be incorporated into the humanized antibody in order to maintain CDR conformation. In addition, analysis of the sequences of the import and humanized antibodies and reference to the models can help to discern which framework residues are unusual and thereby might be involved in antigen binding or maintenance of proper antibody structure.

All of the humanized antibody models of this invention are based on a single three-dimensional computer graphics structure hereafter referred to as the consensus structure. This consensus structure is a key distinction from the approach of previous workers in the field, who typically begin by selecting a human antibody structure which has an amino acid sequence which is similar to the sequence of their import antibody.

The consensus structure of one embodiment of this invention was built in five steps as described below.

Step 1

Seven Fab X-ray crystal structures from the Brookhaven Protein Data Bank were used (entries 2FB4, 2RHE, 3FAB, and 1 REI which are human structures, and 2MCP, 1 FBJ, and 2HFL which are murine structures). For each structure, protein mainchain geometry and hydrogen bonding patterns were used to assign each residue to one of three secondary structure types: alpha-helix, beta-strand or other (i.e. nonhelix and non-strand). The immunoglobulin residues used in superpositioning and those included in the consensus structure are shown in Table 1.

TABLE I

Immunoglobulin Residues Used in Superpositioning and Those Included in the Consensus Structure								
lg*	2FB4	2RHE	2MCP	3FAB	1FBJ	2HFL	1REI	Consensus
	1		-	$V_L \kappa$ dom	ain			
								2-11
	18-24	18-24	19-25	18-24	19-25	19-25	19-25	16-27
	32-37	34-39	39-44	32-37	32-37	32-37	33-38	33-39
								41-49
	60-66	62-68	67-72	53-66	60-65	60-65	61-66	59-77
	69-74	71-76	76-81	69-74	69-74	69-74	70-75	
	84-88	86-90	91-95	84-88	84-88	84-88	85-89	82-91
								101-105
RMS ^e		0.40	0.60	0.53	0.54	0.48	0.50	
				V _H doma	nin			
								3-8
	18-25		18-25	18-25	18-25	18-25		17-23
	34-39		34-39	34-39	34-39	34-39		33-41
	46-52		46-52	46-52	46-52	46-52		45-51
	57-61		59-63	56-60	57-61	57-61		57-61
	68-71		70-73	67-70	68-71	68-71		66-71
	78-84		80-86	77-83	78-84	78-84		75-82
	92-99		94-101	91-98	92-99	92-99		88-94 102-108

15

TABLE 1-continued									
-	Lmmunog	Immusoglobulin Residues Used in Superpositioning and Those Included in the Consensus Structure							
Igª	2FB4	2RHE	2MCP	3FAB	1FBJ	2HFL	IREI	Consensus ^b	
RMS ^c RMS ^d	0.91		0.43 0.73	0.85 0.77	0.62 0.92	0.91			

*Four-letter code for Protein Data Bank file.

^bResidue numbers for the crystal structures are taken from the Protein Data Bank files. Residue

numbers for the consensus structure are according to Kabat et al. "Root-mean-square deviation in A for (N, Co, C) atoms superimposed on 2FB4.

^dRoot-mean-square deviation in A for (N, Ca, C) atoms superimposed on 2HFL.

Construction and and the first states and

Step 2

Having identified the alpha-helices and beta-strands in each of the seven structures, the structures were superimposed on one another using the INSIGHT computer program (Biosym Technologies, San Diego, Calif.) as follows: The 2FB4 structure was arbitrarily chosen as the template (or reference) structure. The 2FB4 was held fixed in space and the other six structures rotated and translated in space so that their common secondary structural elements (i.e. alphahelices and beta-strands) were oriented such that these common elements were as close in position to one another as possible. (This superpositioning was performed using accepted mathematical formulae rather than actually physically moving the structures by hand.)

Step 3

With the seven structures thus superimposed, for each 30 residue in the template (2FB4) Fab one calculates the distance from the template alpha-carbon atom (Co) to the analogous Ca atom in each of the other six superimposed structures. This results in a table of Ca-Ca distances for each residue position in the sequence. Such a table is 35 necessary in order to determine which residue positions will be included in the consensus model. Generally, is if all Ca-Ca distances for a given residue position were ≤ 1.0 Å, that position was included in the consensus structure. If for a given position only one Fab crystal structure was >1.0 Å, 40 the position was included but the outlying crystal structure was not included in the next step (for this position only). In general, the seven \$\beta-strands were included in the consensus structure while some of the loops connecting the β-strands, e.g. complementarity-determining regions (CDRs), were not 45 included in view of Ca divergence.

Step 4

For each residue which was included in the consensus structure after step 3, the average of the coordinates for individual mainchain N, C α , C, O and C β atoms were 50 calculated. Due to the averaging procedure, as well as variation in bond length, bond angle and dihedral angle among the crystal structures, this "average" structure contained some bond lengths and angles which deviated from standard geometry. For purposes of this invention, "standard 55 geometry" is understood to include geometries commonly accepted as typical, such as the compilation of bond lengths and angles from small molecule structures in Weiner, S. J. et. al., J. Amer. Chem. Soc., 106: 765–784 (1984).

Step 5

In order to correct these deviations, the final step was to subject the "average" structure to 50 cycles of energy minimization (DISCOVER program, Biosym Technologies) using the AMBER (Weiner, S. J. et. al., J. Amer. Chem. Soc., 106: 765-784 (1984)) parameter set with only the Ca coordinates fixed (i.e. all other atoms are allowed to move) (energy minimization is described below). This allowed any deviant bond lengths and angles to assume a standard (chemically acceptable) geometry. See Table II.

TABLE II

		V _L κ before (Å)	V _L ĸ after (Å)	V _H before (Å)	V _H after (Å)	Stan- dard Geo- metry (Å)
N-Ca	1.4	59(0.012)	1.451(0.004)	1.451(0.023)	1.452(0.004)	1.449
Ca-C	1.5	15(0.012)	1.523(0.005)	1.507(0.033)	1.542(0.005)	1.522
O=C		08(0.062)	1.229(0.003)	1.160(0.177)	1.231(0.003)	1.229
C-N		88(0.049)	1.337(0.002)	1.282(0.065)	1.335(0.004)	1.335
Ca-Cβ	1.5	08(0.026)	1.530(0.002)	1.499(0.039)	1.530(0.002)	1.526
		(*)	(*)	(*)	(*)	(•)
C—N—Ca		123.5(4.3	2) 123.8(1.1)	125.3(4.6)	124.0(1.1)	121.9
N-Ca-C		110.0(4.0) 109.5(1.9)	110.3(2.8)	109.5(1.6)	110.1
Ca-C-N		116.6(4.0) 116.6(1.2)	117.6(5.2)	116.6(0.8)	116.6
O=C-N		123.1(4.)		122.2(4.9)	123.3(0.4)	122.9
N-Ca-CB		110.3(2.)		110.6(2.5)	109.8(0.6)	109.5
CB-Ca-C		111.4(2.4	() 111.1(0.7)	111.2(2.2)	111.1(0.6)	111.1

Values in parentheses are standard deviations. Note that while some bond length and angle averages did not change appreciably after energy-minimization, the corresponding standard deviations are reduced due to deviant geometries assuming standard values after energy-minimization. Standard geometry values are from the AMBER forcefield as implemented in DISCOVER (Biosym Technologies).

The consensus structure might conceivably be dependent upon which crystal structure was chosen as the template on which the others were superimposed. As a test, the entire procedure was repeated using the crystal structure with the worst superposition versus 2FB4, i.e. the 2HFL Fab structure, as the new template (reference). The two consensus structures compare favorably (root-mean-squared deviation of 0.11 Å for all N, C α and C atoms).

Note that the consensus structure only includes mainchain (N, C α , C, O, C β atoms) coordinates for only those residues which are part of a conformation common to all seven X-ray crystal structures. For the Fab structures, these include the common β -strands (which comprise two β -sheets) and a few non-CDR loops which connect these β -strands. The consensus structure does not include CDRs or sidechains, both of which vary in their conformation among the seven structures. Also, note that the consensus structure includes only the V_L and V_H domains.

This consensus structure is used as the archetype. It is not particular to any species, and has only the basic shape without side chains. Starting with this consensus structure the model of any import, human, or humanized Fab can be constructed as follows. Using the amino acid sequence of the particular antibody V_L and V_H domains of interest, a computer graphics program (such as INSIGHT, Biosym Technologies) is used to add sidechains and CDRs to the 5 consensus structure. When a sidechain is added, its conformation is chosen on the basis of known Fab crystal structures (see the Background section for publications of such crystal structures) and rotamer libraries (Ponder, J. W. & Richards, F. M., J. Mol. Biol. 193: 775–791 (1987)). The 10 model also is constructed so that the atoms of the sidechain are positioned so as to not collide with other atoms in the Fab.

CDRs are added to the model (now having the backbone plus side chains) as follows. The size (i.e. number of amino 15 acids) of each import CDR is compared to canonical CDR structures tabulated by Chothia et al., Nature, 342:877-883 (1989)) and which were derived from Fab crystals. Each CDR sequence is also reviewed for the presence or absence of certain specific amino acid residues which are identified 20 by Chothia as structurally important: e.g. light chain residues 29 (CDR1) and 95 (CDR3), and heavy chain residues 26, 27, 29 (CDR1) and 55 (CDR2). For light chain CDR2, and heavy chain CDR3, only the size of the CDR is compared to the Chothia canonical structure. If the size and 25 sequence (i.e. inclusion of the specific, structurally important residues as denoted by Chothia et al.) of the import CDR agrees in size and has the same structurally important residues as those of a canonical CDR, then the mainchain conformation of the import CDR in the model is taken to be 30 the same as that of the canonical CDR. This means that the import sequence is assigned the structural configuration of the canonical CDR, which is then incorporated in the evolving model.

However, if no matching canonical CDIR can be assigned 35 for the import CDR, then one of two options can be exercised. First, using a program such as INSIGHT (Biosym Technologies), the Brookhaven Protein Data Bank can be searched for loops with a similar size to that of the import CDR and these loops can be evaluated as possible conformations for the import CDR in the model. Minimally, such loops must exhibit a conformation in which no loop atom overlaps with other protein atoms. Second, one can use available programs which calculate possible loop conformations, assuming a given loop size, using methods 45 such as described by Bruccoleri et al., *Nature* 335: 564–568 (1988).

When all CDRs and sidechains have been added to the consensus structure to give the final model (import, human or humanized), the model is preferably subjected to energy 50 minimization using programs which are available commercially (e.g. DISCOVER, Biosym Technologies). This technique uses complex mathematical formulae to refine the model by performing such tasks as checking that all atoms are within appropriate distances from one another and 55 checking that bond lengths and angles are within chemically acceptable limits.

Models of a humanized, import or human antibody sequence are used in the practice of this invention to understand the impact of selected amino acid residues of the activity of the sequence being modeled. For example, such a model can show residues which may be important in antigen binding, or for maintaining the conformation of the antibody, as discussed in more detail below. Modeling can also be used to explore the potential impact of changing any 65 amino acid residue in the antibody sequence. Methods for Obtaining a Humanized Antibody Sequence

In the practice of this invention, the first step in humanizing an import antibody is deriving a consensus amino acid sequence into which to incorporate the import sequences. Next a model is generated for these sequences using the methods described above. In certain embodiments of this invention, the consensus human sequences are derived from the most abundant subclasses in the sequence compilation of Kabat et al. (Kabat, E. A. et al., Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest (National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, Md., 1987)), namely $V_L \kappa$ subgroup I and V_H group III, and have the sequences indicated in the definitions above.

While these steps may be taken in different order, typically a structure for the candidate humanized antibody is created by transferring the at least one CDR from the non-human, import sequence into the consensus human structure, after the entire corresponding human CDR has been removed. The humanized antibody may contain human replacements of the non-human import residues at positions within CDRs as defined by sequence variability (Kabat, E. A. et al., Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest (National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, Md., 1987)) or as defined by structural variability (Chothia, C. & Lesk, A. M., J. Mol. Biol. 196:901-917 (1987)). For example, huMAb4D5 contains human replacements of the muMAb4D5 residues at three positions within CDRs as defined by sequence variability (Kabat, E. A. et al., Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest (National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, Md., 1987)) but not as defined by structural variability (Chothia, C. & Lesk, A. M., J. Mol Bol. 196:901-917 (1987)): Vr-CDR1 K24R, V_L-CDR2 R54L and V_L-CDR2 T56S.

Differences between the non-human import and the human consensus framework residues are individually investigated to determine their possible influence on CDR conformation and/or binding to antigen. Investigation of such possible influences is desirably performed through modeling, by examination of the characteristics of the amino acids at particular locations, or determined experimentally through evaluating the effects of substitution or mutagenesis of particular amino acids.

In certain preferred embodiments of this invention, a humanized antibody is made comprising amino acid sequence of an import, non-human antibody and a human antibody, utilizing the steps of:

- a. obtaining the amino acid sequences of at least a portion of an import antibody variable domain and of a consensus human variable domain;
- b. identifying Complementarity Determining Region (CDR) amino acid sequences in the import and the human variable domain sequences;
- c. substituting an import CDR amino acid sequence for the corresponding human CDR amino acid sequence;
- aligning the amino acid sequences of a Framework Region (FR) of the import antibody and the corresponding FR of the consensus antibody;
- e. identifying import antibody FR residues in the aligned FR sequences that are non-homologous to the corresponding consensus antibody residues;
- f. determining if the non-homologous import amino acid residue is reasonably expected to have at least one of the following effects:
 - 1. non-covalently binds antigen directly,
 - 2. interacts with a CDR; or
 - 3. participates in the $V_L V_H$ interface; and
- g. for any non-homologous import antibody amino acid residue which is reasonably expected to have at least

one of these effects, substituting that residue for the corresponding amino acid residue in the consensus antibody FR sequence.

Optionally, one determines if any non-homologous residues identified in step (e) are exposed on the surface of the 5 domain or buried within it, and if the residue is exposed but has none of the effects identified in step (f), one may retain the consensus residue.

Additionally, in certain embodiments the corresponding consensus antibody residues identified in step (e) above are 10 selected from the group consisting of 4L, 35L, 36L, 38L, 43L, 44L, 46L, 58L, 62L, 63L, 64L, 65L, 66L, 67L, 68L, 69L, 70L, 71 L, 4H, 24H, 36H, 37H, 39H, 43H, 45H, 49H, 58H, 60H, 67H, 68H, 69H, 70H, 73H, 74H, 75H, 76H, 78H, 91H, 92H, 93H, and 103H (utilizing the numbering system 15 set forth in Kabat, E. A. et al., Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest (National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, Md., 1987)).

In preferred embodiments, the method of this invention comprises the additional steps of searching either or both of the import, non-human and the consensus variable domain sequences for glycosylation sites, determining if the glycosylation is reasonably expected to be important for the desired antigen binding and biological activity of the antibody (i.e., determining if the glycosylation site binds to 25 antigen or changes a side chain of an amino acid residue that binds to antigen, or if the glycosylation enhances or weakens antigen binding, or is important for maintaining antibody affinity). if the import sequence bears the glycosylation site, it is preferred to substitute that site for the corresponding 30 residues in the consensus human sequence if the glycosylation site is reasonably expected to be important. If only the consensus sequence, and not the import, bears the glycosylation site, it is preferred to eliminate that glycosylation site or substitute therefor the corresponding amino acid residues 35 from the import sequence.

Another preferred embodiment of the methods of this invention comprises aligning import antibody and the consensus antibody FR sequences, identifying import antibody FR residues which are non-homologous with the aligned 40 consensus FR sequence, and for each such non-homologous import antibody FR residue, determining if the corresponding consensus antibody residue represents a residue which is highly conserved across all species at that site, and if it is so conserved, preparing a humanized antibody which comprises the consensus antibody amino acid residue at that site.

In certain alternate embodiments, one need not utilize the modeling and evaluation steps described above, and may instead proceed with the steps of obtaining the amino acid sequence of at least a portion of an import, non-human ⁵⁰ antibody variable domain having a CDR and a FR, obtaining the amino acid sequence of at least a portion of a consensus human antibody variable domain having a CDR and a FR, substituting the non-human CDR for the human CDR in the consensus human antibody variable domain, and then substituting an amino acid residue for the consensus amino acid residue for the following sites:

- a. (in the FR of the variable domain of the light chain) 4L, 35L, 36L, 38L, 43L, 44L, 58L, 46L, 62L, 63L, 64L, 65L, 66L, 67L, 68L, 69L, 70L, 71L, 73L, 85L, 87L, 60 98L, or
- b. fin the FR of the variable domain of the heavy chain) 2H, 4H, 24H, 36H, 37H, 39H, 43H, 45H, 49H, 58H, 60H, 67H, 68H, 69H, 70H, 73H, 74H, 75H, 76H, 78H, 91H, 92H, 93H, and 103H.

Preferably, the non-CDR residue substituted at the consensus FR site is the residue found at the corresponding location of the non-human antibody. If desired, one may utilize the other method steps described above for determining whether a particular amino acid residue can reasonably be expected to have undesirable effects, and remedying those effects.

If after making a humanized antibody according to the steps above and testing its activity one is not satisfied with the humanized antibody, one preferably reexamines the potential effects of the amino acids at the specific locations recited above. Additionally, it is desirable to reinvestigate any buried residues which are reasonably expected to affect the $V_L - V_H$ interface but may not directly affect CDR conformation. It is also desirable to reevaluate the humanized antibody utilizing the steps of the methods claimed herein.

In certain embodiments of this invention, amino acid residues in the consensus human sequence are substituted for by other amino acid residues. In preferred embodiments, residues from a particular non-human import sequence are substituted, however there are circumstances where it is desired to evaluate the effects of other amino acids. For example, if after making a humanized antibody according to the steps above and testing its activity one is not satisfied with the humanized antibody, one may compare the sequences of other classes or subgroups of human antibodies, or classes or subgroups of antibodies from the particular non-human species, and determine which other amino acid side chains and amino acid residues are found at particular locations and substituting such other residues.

Certain aspects of this invention are directed to natural antibodies and to monoclonal antibodies, as illustrated in the Examples below and by antibody hybridomas deposited with the ATCC (as described below). Thus, the references throughout this description to the use of monoclonal antibodies are intended to include the use of natural or native antibodies as well as humanized and chimeric antibodies. As used herein, the term "antibody" includes the antibody variable domain and other separable antibody domains unless specifically excluded.

In accordance with certain aspects of this invention, antibodies to be humanized (import antibodies) are isolated from continuous hybrid cell lines formed by the fusion of antigen-primed immune lymphocytes with myeloma cells. in certain embodiments, the antibodies of this invention are obtained by routine screening. Polyclonal antibodies to an antigen generally are raised in animals by multiple subcutaneous (sc) or intraperitoneal (ip) injections of the antigen and an adjuvant. It may be useful to conjugate the antigen or a fragment containing the target amino acid sequence to a protein that is immunogenic in the species to be immunized, e.g., keyhole limpet hemocyanin, serum albumin, bovine thyroglobulin, or soybean trypsin inhibitor using a bifunctional or derivatizing agent, for example, maleimidobenzoyl sulfosuccinimide ester (conjugation through cysteine residues), N-hydroxysuccinimide (through lysine residues), glutaraldehyde, succinic is anhydride, SOCl,, or R¹N=C=NR, where R and R¹ are different alkyl groups.

The route and schedule of the host animal or cultured antibody-producing cells therefrom are generally in keeping with established and conventional techniques for antibody stimulation and production. While mice are frequently employed as the test model, it is contemplated that any mammalian subject including human subjects or antibodyproducing cells obtained therefrom can be manipulated according to the processes of this invention to serve as the basis for production of mammalian, including human, hybrid cell lines.

Animals are typically immunized against the immunogenic conjugates or derivatives by combining 1 mg or 1 μ g of conjugate (for rabbits or mice, respectively) with 3 volumes of Freund's complete adjuvant and injecting the solution intradermally at multiple sites. One month later the 5 animals are boosted with 1/s to 1/10 the original amount of conjugate in Freund's complete adjuvant (or other suitable adjuvant) by subcutaneous injection at multiple sites. 7 to 14 days later animals are bled and the serum is assayed for antigen titer. Animals are boosted until the titer plateaus. 10 Preferably, the animal is boosted with the conjugate of the same antigen, but conjugated to a different protein and/or through a different cross-linking agent. Conjugates also can be made in recombinant cell culture as protein fusions. Also, aggregating agents such as alum are used to enhance the immune response.

After immunization, monoclonal antibodiesare prepared by recovering immune lymphoid cells—typically spleen cells or lymphocytes from lymph node tissue—from immunized animals and immortalizing the cells in conventional fashion, e.g. by fusion with myeloma cells or by Epstein-20 Barr (EB)-virus transformation and screening for clones expressing the desired antibody. The hybridoma technique described originally by Kohler and Milstein, *Eur. J. Immunol.* 6:511 (1976) has been widely applied to produce hybrid cell lines that secrete high levels of monoclonal antibodies 25 against many specific antigens.

It is possible to fuse cells of one species with another. However, it is preferable that the source of the immunized antibody producing cells and the myeloma be from the same species.

The hybrid cell lines can be maintained in culture in vitro in cell culture media. The cell lines of this invention can be selected and/or maintained in a composition comprising the continuous cell line in hypoxanthine-aminopterin thymidine (HAT) medium. In fact, once the hybridoma cell line is 35 established, it can be maintained on a variety of nutritionally adequate media. Moreover, the hybrid cell lines can be stored. and preserved in any number of conventional ways, including freezing and storage under liquid nitrogen. Frozen cell lines can be revived and cultured indefinitely with 40 resumed synthesis and secretion of monoclonal antibody. The secreted antibody is recovered from tissue culture supernatant by conventional methods such as precipitation, Ion exchange chromatography, affinity chromatography, or the like. The antibodies described herein are also recovered 45 from hybridoma cell cultures by conventional methods for purification of IgG or IgM as the case may be that heretofore have been used to purify these immunoglobulins from pooled plasma, e.g. ethanol or polyethylene glycol precipitation procedures. The purified antibodies are sterile filtered, 50 and optionally are conjugated to a detectable marker such as an enzyme or spin label for use in diagnostic assays of the antigen in test samples.

While routinely rodent monoclonal antibodies are used as the source of the import antibody, the invention is not 55 limited to any species. Additionally, techniques developed for the production of chimeric antibodies (Morrison et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.*, 81:6851 (1984); Neuberger et al., *Nature* 312:604 (1984); Takeda et al., *Nature* 314:452 (1985)) by splicing the genes from a mouse antibody molecule of appropriate antigen specificity together with genes from a human antibody molecule of appropriate biological activity (such as ability to activate human complement and mediate ADCC) can be used; such antibodies are within the scope of this invention. 65

Techniques for creating recombinant DNA versions of the antigen-binding regions of antibody molecules (known as 24

Fab fragments) which bypass the generation of monoclonal antibodies are encompassed within the practice of this invention. One extracts antibody-specific messenger ANA molecules from immune system cells taken from an immunized animal, transcribes these into complementary DNA (cDNA), and clones the CDNA into a bacterial expressions system. One example of such a technique suitable for the practice of this invention was developed by researchers at Scripps/Stratagene, and incorporates a proprietary bacteriophage lambda vector system which contains a leader sequence that causes the expressed Fab protein to migrate to the periplasmic space (between the bacterial cell membrane and the cell wall) or to be secreted. One can rapidly generate and screen great numbers of functional FAb fragments for those which bind the antigen. Such FAb fragments with specificity for the antigen are specifically encompassed within the term "antibody" as it is defined, discussed, and claimed herein.

Amino Acid Sequence Variants

Amino acid sequence variants of the antibodies and polypeptides of this invention (referred to in herein as the target polypeptide) are prepared by introducing appropriate nucleotide changes into the DNA encoding the target polypeptide, or by in vitro synthesis of the desired target polypeptide. Such variants include, for example, humanized variants of non-human antibodies, as well as deletions from, or insertions or substitutions of, residues within particular amino acid sequences. Any combination of deletion, insertion, and substitution can be made to arrive at the final construct, provided that the final construct possesses the desired characteristics. The amino acid changes also may alter post-translational processes of the target polypeptide, such as changing the number or position of glycosylation sites, altering any membrane anchoring characteristics, and/ or altering the intra-cellular location of the target polypeptide by inserting, deleting, or otherwise affecting any leader sequence of the native target polypeptide.

In designing amino acid sequence variants of target polypeptides, the location of the mutation site and the nature of the mutation will depend on the target polypeptide characteristics) to be modified. The sites for mutation can be modified individually or in series, e.g., by (1) substituting first with conservative amino acid choices and then with more radical selections depending upon the results achieved, (2) deleting the target residue, or (3) inserting residues of the same or a different class adjacent to the located site, or combinations of options 1–3. In certain embodiments, these choices are guided by the methods for creating humanized sequences set forth above.

A useful method for identification of certain residues or regions of the target polypeptide that are preferred locations for mutagenesis is called "alanine scanning mutagenesism" as described by Cunningham and Wells (Science, 244: 1081-1085 [1989). Here, a residue or group of target residues are identified (e.g., charged residues such as arg, asp, his, lys, and glu) and replaced by a neutral or negatively charged amino acid (most preferably alanine or polyalanine) to affect the interaction of the amino acids with the surrounding aqueous environment in or outside the cell. Those domains demonstrating functional sensitivity to the substitutions then are refined by introducing further or other variants at or for the sites of substitution. Thus, while the site for introducing an amino acid sequence variation is predetermined, the nature of the mutation per se need not be predetermined. For example, to optimize the performance of a mutation at a given site, ala scanning or random mutagenesis may be conducted at the target codon or region and the

916 of 1033

expressed target polypeptide variants are screened for the optimal combination of desired activity.

There are two principal variables in the construction of amino acid sequence variants: the location of the mutation site and the nature of the mutation. In general, the location 5 and nature of the mutation chosen will depend upon the target polypeptide characteristic to be modified.

Amino acid sequence deletions of antibodies are generally not preferred, as maintaining the generally configuration of an antibody is believed to be necessary for its activity. Any 10 deletions will be selected so as to preserve the structure of the target antibody.

Amino acid sequence insertions include amino- and/or carboxyl-terminal fusions ranging in length from one residue to polypeptides containing a hundred or more residues, 15 as well as intrasequence insertions of single or multiple amino acid residues. Intrasequence insertions (i.e., insertions within the target polypeptide sequence) may range generally from about 1 to 10 residues, more preferably 1 to 5, most preferably 1 to 3. Examples of terminal insertions 20 include the target polypeptide with an N-terminal methionyl residue, an artifact of the direct expression of target polypeptide in bacterial recombinant cell culture, and fusion of a heterologous N-terminal signal sequence to the N-terminus of the target polypeptide molecule to facilitate the secretion 25 of the mature target polypeptide from recombinant host cells. Such signal sequences generally will be obtained from, and thus homologous to, the intended host cell species. Suitable sequences include STII or Ipp for E. coli, alpha factor for yeast, and viral signals such as herpes gD for 30 mammalian cells.

Other insertional variants of the target polypeptide include the fusion to the N- or C-terminus of the target polypeptide of immunogenic polypeptides, e.g., bacterial polypeptides such as beta-lactamase or an enzyme encoded 35 by the E. coli trp locus, or yeast protein, and C-terminal fusions with proteins having a long half-life such as immunoglobulin constant regions (or other immunoglobulin regions), albumin, or ferritin, as described in WO 89/02922 published Apr. 6, 1989.

Another group of variants are amino acid substitution variants. These variants have at least one amino acid residue in the target polypeptide molecule removed and a different residue inserted in its place. The sites of greatest interest for substitutional mutagenesis include sites identified as the 45 active site(s) of the target polypeptide, and sites where the amino acids found in the target polypeptide from various species are substantially different in terms of side-chain bulk, charge, and/or hydrophobicity. Other sites for substitution are described infra, considering the effect of the 50 length are used. An optimal oligonucleotide will have 12 to substitution of the antigen binding, affinity and other characteristics of a particular target antibody.

Other sites of interest are those in which particular residues of the target polypeptides obtained from various species are identical. These positions may be important for 55 the biological activity of the target polypeptide. These sites, especially those falling within a sequence of at least three other identically conserved sites, are substituted in a relatively conservative manner. If such substitutions result in a change in biological activity, then other changes are intro- 60 duced and the products screened until the desired effect is obtained.

Substantial modifications in function or immunological identity of the target polypeptide are accomplished by selecting substitutions that differ significantly in their effect 65 on maintaining (a) the structure of the polypeptide backbone in the area of the substitution, for example, as a sheet or

helical conformation, lb) the charge or hydrophobicity of the molecule at the target site, or (c) the bulk of the side chain. Naturally occurring residues are divided into groups based on common side chain properties:

(1) hydrophobic: norleucine, met, ala, val, leu, ile;

(2) neutral hydrophilic: cys, ser, thr;

(3) acidic: asp, glu;

(4) basic: asn, gin, his, lys, arg;

(5) residues that influence chain orientation: gly, pro; and (6) aromatic: trp, tyr, phe.

Non-conservative substitutions will entail exchanging a member of one of these classes for another. Such substituted residues may be introduced into regions of the target polypeptide that are homologous with other antibodies of the same class or subclass, or, more preferably, into the nonhomologous regions of the molecule.

Any cysteine residues not involved in maintaining the proper conformation of target polypeptide also may be substituted, generally with serine, to improve the oxidative stability of the molecule and prevent aberrant crosslinking.

DNA encoding amino acid sequence variants of the target polypeptide is prepared by a variety of methods known in the art. These methods include, but are not limited to, isolation from a natural source (in the case of naturally occurring amino acid sequence variants) or preparation by oligonucleotide-mediated (or site-directed) mutagenesis, PCR mutagenesis, and cassette mutagenesis of an earlier prepared variant or a non-variant version of the target polypeptide. A particularly preferred method of gene conversion mutagenesis is described below in Example 1. These techniques may utilized target polypeptide nucleic acid (DNA or RNA), or nucleic acid complementary to the target polypeptide nucleic acid.

Oligonucleotide-mediated mutagenesis is a preferred method for preparing substitution, deletion, and insertion variants of target polypeptide DNA. This technique is well known in the art as described by Adelman et al., DNA, 2: 183 (1983). Briefly, the target polypeptide DNA is altered by hybridizing an oligonucleotide encoding the desired mutation to a DNA template, where the template is the singlestranded form of a plasmid or bacteriophage containing the unaltered or native DNA sequence of the target polypeptide. After hybridization, a DNA polymerase is used to synthesize an entire second complementary strand of the template that will thus incorporate the oligonucleotide primer, and will code for the selected alteration in the target polypeptide DNA.

Generally, oligonucleotides of at least 25 nucleotides in 15 nucleotides that are completely complementary to the template on either side of the nucleotide(s) coding for the mutation. This ensures that the oligonucleotide will hybridize properly to the single-stranded DNA template molecule. The oligonucleotides are readily synthesized using techniques known in the art such as that described by Crea et al. (Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 75: 5765 [1978]).

Single-stranded DNA template may also be generated by denaturing double-stranded plasmid (or other) DNA using standard techniques.

For alteration of the native DNA sequence (to generate amino acid sequence variants, for example), the oligonucleotide is hybridized to the single-stranded template under suitable hybridization conditions. A DNA polymerizing enzyme, usually the Klenow fragment of DNA polymerase 1, is then added to synthesize the complementary strand of the template using the oligonucleotide as a primer for

917 of 1033

BI Exhibit 1002

synthesis. A heteroduplex molecule is thus formed such that one strand of DNA encodes the mutated form of the target polypeptide, and the other strand (the original template) encodes the native, unaltered sequence of the target polypeptide. This heteroduplex molecule is then transformed into a *s* suitable host cell, usually a prokaryote such as *E. coli* JM101. After the cells are grown, they are plated onto agarose plates and screened using the oligonucleotide primer radiolabeled with 32-phosphate to identify the bacterial colonies that contain the mutated DNA. The mutated region 10 is then removed and placed in an appropriate vector for protein production, generally an expression vector of the type typically employed for transformation of an appropriate host.

The method described immediately above may be modi- 15 fied such that a homoduplex molecule is created wherein both strands of the plasmid contain the mutation(s). The modifications are as follows: The single-stranded oligonucleotide is annealed to the single-stranded template as described above. A mixture of three deoxyribonucleotides, 20 deoxyriboadenosine (dATP), deoxyriboguanosine (dGTP), and deoxyribothymidine (dTTP), is combined with a modified thio-deoxyribocytosine called dCTP-(aS) (which can be obtained from Amersham Corporation). This mixture is added to the template-oligonucleotide complex. Upon addi-25 tion of DNA polymerase to this mixture, a strand of DNA identical to the template except for the mutated bases is generated. In addition, this new strand of DNA will contain dCTP-(aS) instead of dCTP, which serves to protect it from restriction endonuclease digestion.

After the template strand of the double-stranded heteroduplex is nicked with an appropriate restriction enzyme, the template strand can be digested with ExoIII nuclease or another appropriate nuclease past the region that contains the site(s) to be mutagenized. The reaction is then stopped to 35 leave a molecule that is only partially single-stranded. A complete double-stranded DNA homoduplex is then formed using DNA polymerase in the presence of all four deoxyribonucleotide triphosphates, ATP, and DNA ligase. This homoduplex molecule can then be transformed into a suitable host cell such as *E. coli* JM101, as described above.

DNA encoding target polypeptide variants with more than one amino acid to be substituted may be generated in one of several ways. If the amino acids are located close together in the polypeptide chain, they may be mutated simulta-45 neously using one oligonucleotide that codes for all of the desired amino acid substitutions. If, however, the amino acids are located some distance from each other (separated by more than about ten amino acids), it is more difficult to generate a single oligonucleotide that encodes all of the 50 desired changes. Instead, one of two alternative methods may be employed.

In the first method, a separate oligonucleotide is generated for each amino acid to be substituted. The oligonucleotides are then annealed to the single-stranded template DNA 55 simultaneously, and the second strand of DNA that is synthesized from the template will encode all of the desired amino acid substitutions.

The alternative method involves two or more rounds of mutagenesis to produce the desired mutant. The first round 60 is as described for the single mutants: wild-type DNA is used for the template, an oligonucleotide encoding the first desired amino acid substitution(s) is annealed to this template, and the heteroduplex DNA molecule is then generated. The second round of mutagenesis utilizes the 65 mutated DNA produced in the first round of mutagenesis as the template. Thus, this template already contains one or

more mutations. The oligonucleotide encoding the additional desired amino acid substitution(s) is then annealed to this template, and the resulting strand of DNA now encodes mutations from both the first and second rounds of mutagenesis. This resultant DNA can be used as a template in a third round of mutagenesis, and so on.

PCR mutagenesis is also suitable for making amino acid variants of target polypeptide. While the following discussion refers to DNA, it is understood that the technique also finds application with RNA. The PCR technique generally refers to the following procedure (see Erlich, supra, the chapter by R. Higuchi, p. 61-70): When small amounts of template DNA are used as starting material in a PCR, primers that differ slightly in sequence from the corresponding region in a template DNA can be used to generate relatively large quantities of a specific DNA fragment that differs from the template sequence only at the positions where the primers differ from the template. For introduction of a mutation into a plasmid DNA, one of the primers is designed to overlap the position of the mutation and to contain the mutation; the sequence of the other primer must be identical to a stretch of sequence of the opposite strand of the plasmid, but this sequence can be located anywhere along the plasmid DNA. It is preferred, however, that the sequence of the second primer is located within 200 nucleotides from that of the first, such that in the end the entire amplified region of DNA bounded by the primers can be easily sequenced. PCR amplification using a primer pair like the one just described results in a population of DNA fragments that differ at the position of the mutation specified by the primer, and possibly at other positions, as template copying is somewhat error-prone.

If the ratio of template to product material is extremely low, the vast majority of product DNA fragments incorporate the desired mutation(s). This product material is used to replace the corresponding region in the plasmid that served as PCR template using standard DNA technology. Mutations at separate positions can be introduced simultaneously by either using a mutant second primer, or performing a second PCR with different mutant primers and ligating the two resulting PCR fragments simultaneously to the vector fragment in a three (or more)-part ligation.

In a specific example of PCR mutagenesis, template plasmid DNA (1 µg) is linearized by digestion with a restriction endonuclease that has a unique recognition site in the plasmid DNA outside of the region to be amplified. Of this material, 100 ng is added to a PCR mixture containing PCR buffer, which contains the four deoxynucleotide triphosphates and is included in the Gene Amp® kits (obtained from Perkin-Elmer Cetus, Norwalk, Conn. and Emeryville, Calif.), and 25 pmole of each oligonucleotide primer, to a final volume of 50µl. The reaction mixture is overlayed with 35 µl mineral oil. The reaction is denatured for 5 minutes at 100° C., placed briefly on ice, and then 1 µl Thermus aquaticus (Taq) DNA polymerase (5 units/µl, purchased from Perkin-Elmer Cetus, Norwalk, Conn. and Emeryville, Calif.) is added below the mineral oil layer. The reaction mixture is then inserted into a DNA Thermal Cycler (purchased from Perkin-Elmer Cetus) programmed as follows: 2 min. at 55° C., then 30 sec. at 72° C., then 19 cycles of the following: 30 sec. at 94° C., 30 sec. at 55° C., and 30 sec. at 72° C.

At the end of the program, the reaction vial is removed from the thermal cycler and the aqueous phase transferred to a new vial, extracted with phenol/chloroform (50:50:vol), and ethanol precipitated, and the DNA is recovered by standard procedures. This material is subsequently subjected to the appropriate treatments for insertion into a vector.

918 of 1033

Another method for preparing variants, cassette mutagenesis, is based on the technique described by Wells et al. (Gene, 34: 315 [1985]). The starting material is the plasmid (or other vector) comprising the target polypeptide DNA to be mutated. The codon(s) in the target polypeptide 5 DNA to be mutated are identified. There must be a unique restriction endonuclease site on each side of the identified mutation site(s). If no such restriction sites exist, they may be generated using the above-described oligonucleotidemediated mutagenesis method to introduce them at appro- 10 priate locations in the target polypeptide DNA. After the restriction sites have been introduced into the plasmid, the plasmid is cut at these sites to linearize it. A double-stranded oligonucleotide encoding the sequence of the DNA between the restriction sites but containing the desired mutation(s) is 15 synthesized using standard procedures. The two strands are synthesized separately and then hybridized together using standard techniques. This double-stranded oligonucleotide is referred to as the cassette. This cassette is designed to have 3' and 5' ends that are compatible with the ends of the 20 linearized plasmid, such that it can be directly ligated to the plasmid. This plasmid now contains the mutated target polypeptide DNA sequence.

Insertion of DNA into a Cloning Vehicle

25 The cDNA or genomic DNA encoding the target polypeptide is inserted into a replicable vector for further cloning (amplification of the DNA) or for expression. Many vectors are available, and selection of the appropriate vector will depend on 1) whether it is to be used for DNA amplification or for DNA expression, 2) the size of the DNA to be inserted 30 into the vector, and 3) the host cell to be transformed with the vector. Each vector contains various components depending on its function (amplification of DNA or expression of DNA) and the host cell for which it is compatible. 35 The vector components generally include, but are not limited to, one or more of the following: a signal sequence, an origin of replication, one or more marker genes, an enhancer element, a promoter, and a transcription termination sequence.

(a) Signal Sequence Component

In general, the signal sequence may be a component of the vector, or it may be a part of the target polypeptide DNA that is inserted into the vector.

The target polypeptides of this invention may be 45 expressed not only directly, but also as a fusion with a heterologous polypeptide, preferably a signal sequence or other polypeptide having a specific cleavage site at the N-terminus of the mature protein or polypeptide. In general, the signal sequence may be a component of the vector, or it 50 may be a part of the target polypeptide DNA that is inserted into the vector. Included within the scope of this invention are target polypeptides with any native signal sequence deleted and replaced with a heterologous signal sequence. The heterologous signal sequence selected should be one 55 that is recognized and processed (i.e. cleaved by a signal peptidase) by the host cell. For prokaryotic host cells that do not recognize and process the native target polypeptide signal sequence, the signal sequence is substituted by a prokaryotic signal sequence selected, for example, from the 60 group of the alkaline phosphatase, penicillinase, lpp, or heat-stable enterotoxin 11 leaders. For yeast secretion the native target polypeptide signal sequence may be substituted by the yeast invertase, alpha factor, or acid phosphatase leaders. In mammalian cell expression the native signal 65 sequence is satisfactory, although other mammalian signal sequences may be suitable.

(b) Origin of Replication Component

Both expression and cloning vectors contain a nucleic acid sequence that enables the vector to replicate in one or more selected host cells. Generally, in cloning vectors this sequence is one that enables the vector to replicate independently of the host chromosomal DNA, and includes origins of replication or autonomously replicating sequences. Such sequences are well known for a variety of bacteria, yeast, and viruses. The origin of replication from the plasmid pBR322 is suitable for most Gram-negative bacteria, the 2µ plasmid origin is suitable for yeast, and various viral origins (SV40, polyoma, adenovirus, VSV or BPV) are useful for cloning vectors in mammalian cells. Generally, the origin of replication component is not needed for mammalian expression vectors (the SV40 origin may typically be used only because it contains the early promoter).

Most expression vectors are "shuttle" vectors, i.e. they are capable of replication in at least one class of organisms but can be transfected into another organism for expression. For example, a vector is cloned in E. coli and then the same vector is transfected into yeast or mammalian cells for expression even though it is not capable of replicating independently of the host cell chromosome.

DNA may also be amplified by insertion into the host genome. This is readily accomplished using Bacillus species as hosts, for example, by including in the vector a DNA sequence that is complementary to a sequence found in Bacillus genomic DNA. Transfection of Bacillus with this vector results in homologous recombination with the genome and insertion of the target polypeptide DNA. However, the recovery of genomic DNA encoding the target polypeptide is more complex than that of an exogenously replicated vector because restriction enzyme digestion is required to excise the target polypeptide DNA.

(c) Selection Gene Component

Expression and cloning vectors should contain a selection gene, also termed a selectable marker. This gene encodes a protein necessary for the survival or growth of transformed host cells grown in a selective culture medium. Host cells not transformed with the vector containing the selection gene will not survive in the culture medium. Typical selection genes encode proteins that (a) confer resistance to antibiotics or other toxins, e.g. ampicillin, neomycin, methotrexate, or tetracycline, (b) complement auxotrophic deficiencies, or (c) supply critical nutrients not available from complex media, e.g. the gene encoding D-alanine racemase for Bacilli.

One example of a selection scheme utilizes a drug to arrest growth of a host cell. Those cells that are successfully transformed with a heterologous gene express a protein conferring drug resistance and thus survive the selection regimen. Examples of such dominant selection use the drugs neomycin (Southern et al., J. Molec. Appl. Genet., 1: 327 [1982]), mycophenolic acid (Mulligan et al., Science=: 1422 [1980]) or hygromycin (Sugden et al., Mol. Cell. Biol., 5: 410-413 [1985]). The three examples given above employ bacterial genes under eukaryotic control to convey resistance to the appropriate drug G418 or neomycin (geneticin), xgpt (mycophenolic acid), or hygromycin, respectively.

Another example of suitable selectable markers for mammalian cells are those that enable the identification of cells competent to take up the target polypeptide nucleic acid, such as dihydrofolate reductase (DHFR) or thymidine kinase. The mammalian cell transformants are placed under selection pressure which only the transformants are uniquely adapted to survive by virtue of having taken up the marker. Selection pressure is imposed by culturing the transformants under conditions in which the concentration of selection agent in the medium is successively changed, thereby leading to amplification of both the selection gene and the DNA that encodes the target polypeptide. Amplification is the process by which genes in greater demand for the production 5 of a protein critical for growth are reiterated in tandem within the chromosomes of successive generations of recombinant cells. Increased quantities of the target polypeptide are synthesized from the amplified DNA.

For example, cells transformed with the DHFR selection 10 gene are first identified by culturing all of the transformants in a culture medium that contains methotrexate (Mtx), a competitive antagonist of DHFR. An appropriate host cell when wild-type DHFR is employed is the Chinese hamster ovary (CHO) cell line deficient in DHFR activity, prepared 15 and propagated as described by Urlaub and Chasin, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 77: 4216 [1980]. The transformed cells are then exposed to increased levels of methotrexate. This leads to the synthesis of multiple copies of the DHFR gene, and, concomitantly, multiple copies of other DNA 20 comprising the expression vectors, such as the DNA encoding the target polypeptide. This amplification technique can be used with any otherwise suitable host, e.g., ATCC No. CCL61 CHO-K1, notwithstanding the presence of endogenous DHFR if, for example, a mutant DHFR gene that is 25 highly resistant to Mtx is employed (EP 117,060). Alternatively, host cells (particularly wild-type hosts that contain endogenous DHFR) transformed or co-transformed with DNA sequences encoding the target polypeptide, wildtype DHFR protein, and another selectable marker such as 30 aminoglycoside 3' phosphotransferase (APH) can be selected by cell growth in medium containing a selection agent for the selectable marker such as an aminoglycosidic antibiotic, e.g., kanamycin, neomycin, or G418. See U.S. Pat. No. 4,965,199. 35

A suitable selection gene for use in yeast is the trp1 gene present in the yeast plasmid YRp7 (Stinchcomb et al., *Nature*, 22: 39 [1979]; Kingsman et al., *Gene*, 7: 141 [1979]; or Tschemper et al., *Gene*, 10: 157 [1980]). The trp1 gene provides a selection marker for a mutant strain of yeast 40 lacking the ability to grow in tryptophan, for example, ATCC No. 44076 or PEP4-1 (Jones, *Genetics*, 5: 12 [1977]). The presence of the trp1 lesion in the yeast host cell genome then provides an effective environment for detecting transformation by growth in the absence of tryptophan. Similarly, 45 Leu2-deficient yeast strains (ATCC 20,622 or 38,626) are complemented by known plasmids bearing the Leu2 gene.

(d) Promoter Component

Expression and cloning vectors usually contain a promoter that is recognized by the host organism and is oper- 50 ably linked to the target polypeptide nucleic acid. Promoters are untranslated sequences located upstream (5') to the start codon of a structural gene (generally within about 100 to 1000 bp) that control the transcription and translation of a particular nucleic acid sequence, such as that encoding the 55 target polypeptide, to which they are operably linked. Such promoters typically fall into two classes, inducible and constitutive. Inducible promoters are promoters that initiate increased levels of transcription from DNA under their control in response to some change in culture conditions, 60 e.g. the presence or absence of a nutrient or a change in temperature. At this time a large number of promoters recognized by a variety of potential host cells are well known. These promoters are operably linked to DNA encoding the target polypeptide by removing the promoter from 65 the source DNA by restriction enzyme digestion and inserting the isolated promoter sequence into the vector. Both the

native target polypeptide promoter sequence and many heterologous promoters may be used to direct amplification and/or expression of the target polypeptide DNA. However, heterologous promoters are preferred, as they generally permit greater transcription and higher yields of expressed target polypeptide as compared to the native target polypeptide promoter.

Promoters suitable for use with prokaryotic hosts include the β-lactamase and lactose promoter systems (Chang et al., Nature, 275: 615 [1978]; and Goeddel et al., Nature, 281: 544 [1979]), alkaline phosphatase, a tryptophan (trp) promoter system (Goeddel, Nucleic Acids Res., 8: 4057 [1980] and EP 36,776) and hybrid promoters such as the tao promoter (deBoer et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci, USA, 80: 21-25 [1983]). However, other known bacterial promoters are suitable. Their nucleotide sequences have been published, thereby enabling a skilled worker operably to ligate them to DNA encoding the target polypeptide (Siebenlist et al., Cell, 20: 269 [1980]) using linkers or adaptors to supply any required restriction sites. Promoters for use in bacterial systems also generally will contain a Shine-Dalgarno (S.D.) sequence operably linked to the DNA encoding the target polypeptide.

Suitable promoting sequences for use with yeast hosts include the promoters for 3-phosphoglycerate kinase (Hitzeman et al., J. Biol. Chem., 255: 2073 [1980]) or other glycolytic enzymes (Hess et al., J. Adv. Enzyme Reg., 2: 149 [1968]; and Holland, Biochemistry, 17: 4900 [1978]), such asenolase, glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase, hexokinase, pyruvate decarboxylase, phosphofructokinase, glucose-6-phosphate isomerase, 3-phosphoglycerate mutase, pyruvate kinase, triosephosphate isomerase, phosphoglucose isomerase, and glucokinase.

Other yeast promoters, which are inducible promoters having the additional advantage of transcription controlled by growth conditions, are the promoter regions for alcohol dehydrogenase 2, isocytochrome C, acid phosphatase, degradative enzymes associated with nitrogen metabolism, metallothionein, glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase, and enzymes responsible for maltose and galactose utilization. Suitable vectors and promoters for use in yeast expression are further described in Hitzeman et al., EP 73,657A. Yeast enhancers also ate advantageously used with yeast promoters.

Promoter sequences are known for eukaryotes. Virtually all eukaryotic genes have an AT-rich region located approximately 25 to 30 bases upstream from the site where transcription is initiated. Another sequence found 70 to 80 bases upstream from the start of transcription of many genes is a CXCAAT region where X may be any nucleotide. At the 3' end of most eukaryotic genes is an AATAAA sequence that may be the signal for addition of the poly A tail to the 3' end of the coding sequence. All of these sequences are suitably inserted into mammalian expression vectors.

Target polypeptide transcription from vectors in mammalian host cells is controlled by promoters obtained from the genomes of viruses such as polyoma virus, fowlpox virus (UK 2,211,504 published Jul. 5, 1989), adenovirus (such as Adenovirus 2), bovine papilloma virus, avian sarcoma virus, cytomegalovirus, a retrovirus, hepatitis-B virus and most preferably Simian Virus 40 (SV40), from heterologous mammalian promoters, e.g. the actin promoter or an immunoglobulin promoters, e.g. the actin promoters, and from the promoter normally associated with the target polypeptide sequence, provided such promoters are compatible with the host cell systems.

The early and late promoters of the SV40 virus are conveniently obtained as an SV40 restriction fragment that